



GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY  
OF  
BRITISH AMERICA  

---

ILLUSTRATED.




ALVIN HAMMOND

Alvin Hammond

Geography

January 14<sup>th</sup> 1862



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2009 with funding from  
Ontario Council of University Libraries

<http://www.archive.org/details/geographyhistory00hodg>



Third Edition, Enlarged and Improved,  
OF THE  
GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY  
OF THE  
BRITISH COLONIES.



# GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY

OF THE

## BRITISH COLONIES;

TO WHICH ARE ADDED A SKETCH OF THE VARIOUS INDIAN TRIBES OF BRITISH AMERICA, AND BRIEF  
BIOGRAPHICAL NOTICES OF EMINENT PERSONS CONNECTED WITH ITS HISTORY.

---

BY J. GEORGE HODGINS, M.A.

Deputy Superintendent of Education for Upper Canada.

---

Illustrated with Eighty superior Engravings on Wood.

---

NINTH THOUSAND.



TORONTO:

PUBLISHED BY MACLEAR & CO.; JAMES CAMPBELL: AND R. & A. MILLER.

1860.

PRINTED BY LOVELL AND OIBSON.

---

*"In scientiâ excellere pulchrum est; sed nescire turpe"*

---

---

Entered, according to an Act of the Provincial Legislature, in the year 1857, by  
JOHN GEORGE HODGINS,  
In the office of the Registrar of the Province of Canada.

## FROM THE PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

The necessity for a work of this kind is the primary reason of its publication. Until a very recent period, the pupils of our public and private schools were left, either to glean a scanty knowledge of their own and the sister Provinces through the often uncertain and inaccurate medium of an European geography, or to adopt the foreigner's unfriendly interpretation of our colonial institutions and laws. This unwise and anomalous state of things has become the more serious, since, under the enlightened system of self-government so frankly conceded to all the British North American Provinces, commercial intercourse has become frequent between them, and a political and social bond of sympathy has been created, which renders absolutely necessary a fuller acquaintance with the mutual history, condition, and capabilities of each. To supply this information, in the simplest form, has been the author's aim. The best accessible authorities have been consulted, and the latest parliamentary returns made available. The paragraphs relating to the special subject of geology, have received their final corrections from Sir William Logan, the distinguished geologist of Canada, and J. W. Dawson, Esq., LL.D., Principal of McGill College, Montreal, and a high authority upon the geology of Nova Scotia, &c. To the Honorable George Coles, Secretary of Prince Edward Island, and to an intelligent gentleman in Newfoundland, the author is indebted for valuable information in regard to those islands. Brief notices of the other British possessions in Europe, Asia, and Africa have been added, in order to make our colonial survey complete.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND AND THIRD EDITIONS.

---

So cordially have the first editions of this Geography and History been received by the public, and so general has been the call for another edition, that the author has lost no time in preparing one for the press. In order to make the work still more attractive, he has added several introductory pages of new matter, (including sketches of the general Geography of Europe, Asia, Africa, America and the United States,) and inserted a few additional engravings.

Although the former arrangement of the pages has been retained, some sections have been re-written; and the chapter relating to the Indians has been entirely re-cast, as well as greatly improved and enlarged. This brief record of the early history of the aborigines of the country, the author deems to be essential to the completeness of any sketch of Canadian Geography and History, especially as traces of the musical language of the Indians still linger in the names of many of the civil and geographical divisions of the country,—a country which was once entirely their own.

In the preparation of this edition for the press, the acknowledgments of the author are especially due to the Rev. John Gray, of Orillia; the Rev. J. B. A. Ferland, Professor of History in the University of Laval, Quebec; and to the Rev. Louis Lafleche, for many years a missionary among the Indians at the north-west.\*

The author has great pleasure in stating that, at the request of an enterprising Canadian publisher, John Lovell, Esq., he is now engaged in the preparation of a work on general geography (embracing every country in the world), which is designed to supersede the anti-British publications on geography, which are to be found in many of our schools.

---

\* Thanks are also due to the Hon. P. J. O. Chauveau and to Henry Fisher, Esq., Chief Superintendents of Education in Lower Canada and New Brunswick, and to other gentlemen for their kind assistance.



## A FEW WORDS TO THE TEACHER.

---

To the teacher a few words from the author may not be inappropriate. In teaching the geography and history of a country, a map of the place described is an almost indispensable necessity. It aids in illustrating the lesson, gives interest to the instruction, and associates in the mind of the pupil the outline and chief features of the country, with its history, its memorable places, and the achievements of its sons. The Heights of Alma and the Heights of Queenston are historic spots alike to the French and English; but to be enabled to trace the course of the Alma and the Niagara, gives interest to the otherwise dry details, and fixes indelibly in the mind of the pupil the lesson of instruction sought to be imparted by the teacher.

Where a large map is not accessible to the teacher, it might be well to direct an expert pupil to draw upon the black-board from an atlas, an enlarged outline of the country described,—its rivers, mountains, and political divisions. This adds interest and variety to the lesson; and even where maps are available, practice of this kind is a sure means of imprinting upon the memory the boundaries, physical features and peculiarities of outline of the country thus depicted. Where this can be done by the class on a smaller scale, and as an exercise upon paper from time to time,—accompanying the outline with a written sketch of the subject of the lesson,—clearness and accuracy, as well as thoroughness will be acquired.

It would greatly facilitate the labor of the teacher were he, before assigning any lesson in geography and history, to test, by a few conversational questions, the pupil's knowledge of his own immediate neighborhood or residence, or that of the school house, the adjacent hills, streams, valleys, roads, country, town or village boundaries, etc. The pupil could thus be led to see that the geography and history, contained in the text book, were but an aggregate of local knowledge, collected into a convenient and accessible shape.

To the foot of each page has been added a series of questions in the form of exercises on the preceding lesson. These questions are simply designed to indicate the nature of the lesson on the page; and may be varied or omitted at the discretion of the teacher.

In regard to the geography and history of Upper and Lower Canada, the biographical and other notices inserted in the work, it may be proper to remark that they are given with some minuteness of detail. The teacher can, however, select such portions only as he may deem suitable for the less advanced among his pupils, and require the parts omitted to be mastered at some future time.

The short sketches of the Gulf Stream, (page 74,) "the banks," and submarine telegraph, of Newfoundland, etc., (pages 94, 95,) are inserted because of the general interest which attaches to them.

In order to make the survey of the Colonial Empire of Britain complete, brief notice of the British dependencies in Europe, Asia and Africa have been added to the work.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
PREFACE - . . . . .	iii
I. INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER - . . . .	1
II. SKETCH OF GENERAL GEOGRAPHY - . . . .	5
III. NORTH AMERICA- . . . . .	12
IV. UPPER CANADA - . . . . .	14
V. LOWER CANADA - . . . . .	28
VI. THE PROVINCE OF CANADA - . . . . .	37
VII. THE INDIANS OF BRITISH NORTH AMERICA - . . . . .	44
VIII. THE HISTORY OF CANADA - . . . . .	50
IX. FAMOUS CANADIAN BATTLE-GROUNDS, OR FORTIFIED POSTS - . . . .	59
X. BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES - . . . . .	63
XI. PROVINCE OF NOVA SCOTIA - . . . . .	72
XII. HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA AND CAPE BRETON - . . . . .	79
XIII. PROVINCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK - . . . . .	82
XIV. HISTORY OF NEW BRUNSWICK - . . . . .	85
XV. PROVINCE OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND - . . . . .	88
XVI. HISTORY OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND - . . . . .	91
XVII. THE PROVINCE OF NEWFOUNDLAND - . . . . .	92
XVIII. THE HISTORY OF NEWFOUNDLAND - . . . . .	97
XIX. THE LABRADOR PENNINSULA - . . . . .	101
XX. HUDSON'S BAY TERRITORIES - . . . . .	102
XXI. HISTORY OF THE HUDSON'S BAY TERRITORIES - . . . . .	105
XXII. THE OTHER BRITISH COLONIES IN AMERICA - . . . . .	108
XXIII. BRITISH COLONIES IN ASIA - . . . . .	115
XXIV. BRITISH COLONIES IN AUSTRALIA - . . . . .	117
XXV. THE BRITISH COLONIES IN OR NEAR AFRICA - . . . . .	119
XXVI. BRITISH DEPENDENCIES IN EUROPE - . . . . .	122
Conclusion - . . . . .	123
XXVII. Table of Colonial Chronology - . . . . .	124
XXVIII. Table of Colonial Precedence - . . . . .	128

# GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

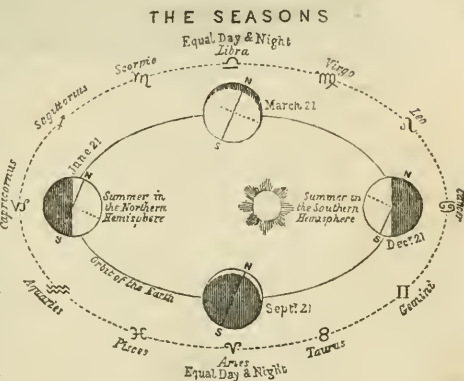
## I. INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

**1. Geography** is a description of the Earth. It is divided into Astronomical, Physical, and Political. Astronomical, refers to the relation of the Earth to the other heavenly bodies; Physical, to its peculiarity of surface; and Political, to its divisions under various governments.

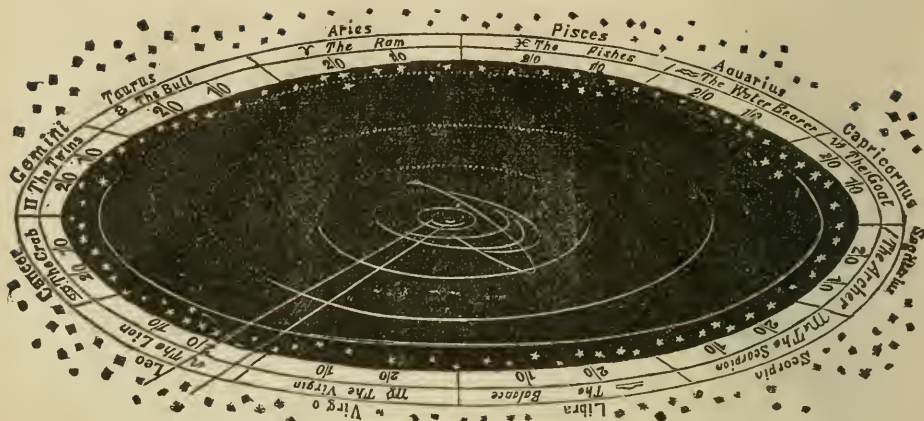
**2. Form, Size, and Motions of the Earth.**—The shape of the earth is like that of an orange—slightly flattened at the North and South Poles. It is nearly 24,000 miles in circumference, and 8,000 in diameter. It is about 95,000,000 miles from the sun and 237,000 miles from the moon (which makes a monthly revolution round it.) The earth revolves daily on its own axis—(See N. and S. in the diagram)—and yearly in an orbit round the sun. The daily rotation of the earth produces day and night. Its annual revolution round the sun, and the inclination of its axis to the plane of its orbit, cause the change of seasons known as Spring, Summer, Autumn and Winter.

**3. The other Heavenly Bodies** which revolve round the sun, are the distant Planets, the Comets, and the Asteroids. Planets, from a Greek word, signifies “a wanderer.” Comets have one point of their orbit near the sun, and the opposite point very far off. Asteroids are minute planets, or parts of planets. The Sun and all these revolving bodies form the solar system. Beyond this solar system are the fixed stars, supposed to be suns and the centres of other systems. The Milky-way, which may be seen on a clear bright night, is composed of nebulae, or clusters of stars.

**4. The Orbits,** or paths, of the other planets are inclined to that of the earth; that is, they are not in the same plane. The following figure represents an oblique view of the plane of the Ecliptic, the orbits of all the primary planets, and the comet



*Exercises.*—What is geography? How divided? Describe the form, size, and motions of the earth, and give its distances from the sun to the moon. What are the reasons? Describe other heavenly bodies.



THE ZODIAC AND THE OBLIQUE VIEW OF THE PLANE OF THE ECLIPTIC.

of 1680. The white line shows that part of each orbit which is above the plane; the dotted line, that below it. The point where the white and dotted lines meet, that is, where the orbit crosses the ecliptic, is called "the node," from *nodus*, a tie or knot. The ecliptic is the *apparent* path of the sun in the heavens, but the *real* path of the earth round the sun. It is called the ecliptic, because every eclipse of the sun or moon must be in or near it. The zodiac is a space or belt sixteen degrees broad, and eight degrees on each side of the ecliptic. It is called zodiac from the Greek word *Zô-on*, an animal, because all the stars, in the twelve parts into which the ancients divided it, were formed into constellations, and most of the twelve constellations were called after some animal. The twelve signs are given on the edge of both diagrams. The circular white lines to the right, crossing the inner orbits, represent the greatly inclined orbit of the planet Pallas; those to the left, represent the orbit of the comet of 1680. The black spaces within the orbits represent the several planes of those orbits.

#### I. ARTIFICIAL DIVISIONS AND DEFINITIONS.

5. The Earth is divided by the equator, or equinoctial line, into the Northern and Southern, and by a meridian line, or equinoctial column, into the Eastern and Western Hemispheres, or half-globes. The axis is an imaginary line passing through the centre of the earth, upon which it is supposed to turn. The two ends of this line are called

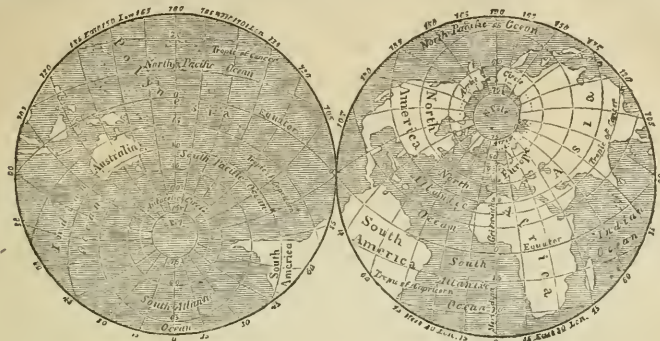
the North and South Poles. The equator is an imaginary line passing round the earth, midway between these poles. Latitude is the distance, north or south, of this equator. Meridian is an imaginary line passing round the earth and through the poles. Longitude is the distance, east or west, of this meridian line. Zones are imaginary belts

*Exercises.*—What are "orbits?" What is a "node?" Describe the "ecliptic" and the "zodiac." Give the "signs" of the zodiac. Describe the diagram. How is the earth divided into hemispheres?



passing round the earth at equal distances from, and parallel to, the equator. There are five zones: the torrid, at the equator; the two temperate, north and south of the equator; and the north and south frigid zones, at the two poles, or polar circles.

**6. Surface.**—The earth's surface is divided into land and water. The land lies chiefly in the Northern Hemisphere, and occupies but one-fourth of its surface. (See the diagram below.) The land surface of the earth is divided into Continents, Islands, Peninsulas, Isthmuses, Capes, Coasts, Mountains, Plains, Valleys, Deserts, &c.



PROPORTION OF LAND AND WATER ON THE GLOBE.

(1) **A Continent** is a vast body of land, embracing several countries.

(2) **An Island** is a portion of land entirely surrounded by water.

(3) **A Peninsula** is a portion of land almost surrounded by water.

(4) **An Isthmus** is a narrow neck of land uniting two larger portions.

(5) **A Cape** is a point of land projecting into an ocean, sea, or lake.

(6) **A Coast or Shore** is the margin of land bordering on an ocean, sea, or lake.

(7) **A Mountain** is a lofty elevation of

land. Mountains occur singly or in chains. Smaller elevations are called hills.

(8) **A Volcano** is a mountain which sends out fire, smoke, or lava.

(9) **A Plain** is a portion of level country. An extensive elevated plain is called a plateau, or table-land.

(10) **A Valley** is a tract of country lying between mountains or hills.

(11) **A Desert** is a barren tract of country, usually consisting of sand and rocks.

(12) **An Oasis** is a fertile spot in the midst of a desert country.

**7. The Water** covers three-fourths of the earth's surface, or nearly the entire Southern Hemisphere—(See the diagram above)—and is divided into Oceans, Seas, Archipelagoes, Gulfs, Bays, Lakes, Straits, Channels, and Rivers.

(1) **An Ocean** is a vast body of salt water, separating continents.

(2) **A Sea** is a smaller body of water than an ocean, nearly surrounded by land.

*Exercises.*—Name the zones. Where are they situated? How is the earth's surface divided? Give the definitions of the various land and water divisions as they are numbered above.

(3) **An Archipelago** is a sea dotted over with islands.

(4) **A Gulf or Bay** is a body of water extending into the land.

(5) **A Lake** is a body of fresh water surrounded by land. Some salt lakes, when large, are commonly called seas.

(6) **A Strait** is a narrow passage connecting two larger bodies of water.

(7) **A Channel** is a narrow passage generally wider than a strait.

(8) **A River** is a stream of fresh water

flowing over the land. Where it begins is the source, where it ends is the mouth, and the part between these two points is the course. The channel is the hollow worn out by the stream, and the basin is the area drained by the river. The confluence is where two streams meet; and the one which there loses its name is called the tributary. The ridge separating two river basins is called the watershed.

(9) **The Oceans** are the Atlantic, Pacific, Indian, Arctic, and Antarctic.

**8. The Chief Natural Phenomena** which are observable, are winds, clouds, fogs, rain, snow, hail, glaciers, avalanches, water-spouts, meteors, volcanoes, and tides.



SNOW LINE OR LIMIT IN THE DIFFERENT ZONES.

9. Rain falls sometime during the year on every part of the Globe except on the Rainless Districts, in the centre of Asia and Africa. Snow falls at the sea level upon Europe; the northern parts of Asia, Africa, and North America; and on the southern parts of Australia, Africa, and South America. Within the tropics, it falls on the mountains at a height of from 15,000 to 20,000 feet above the level of the sea. The snow line or limit in the different zones is shown in the preceding diagram.

10. **The Political Divisions** of the earth are named Empires, Kingdoms, and Republics. In empires and kingdoms, the form of government is styled a *Monarchy*. The Emperor, King, or Queen, is generally an hereditary monarch. Where the monarch possesses unlimited power, as in Russia, the government of the country is called an *Absolute Monarchy*. Where the monarch's power is limited, as in England, the government is termed a *Constitutional*, or *Limited Monarchy*. A *Republic* is a country governed by rulers who are elected for stated periods of time.

11. **The Different Nations** of the earth are usually divided into the savage, half-civilized, and the civilized. In the savage state, men subsist chiefly by hunting, fishing, and the spontaneous productions of the earth. The civilized and enlightened Christian nations are distinguished for their advancement in science, literature, and the arts.

**Exercises.**—Give the definitions of the divisions of the earth's water surface. What is said of natural phenomena, rain, &c.? Give the political divisions mentioned. How are nations divided?



**12. The Principal Forms of Religion** in the world are the Christian, Jewish, Mohammedan, and Pagan. *Christians* are those who believe in the Bible and in Jesus Christ as the Saviour of mankind. *Jews* are those who believe in the Old, but reject the New Testament, and expect a Saviour or Messiah yet to come. *Mo-ham-me-dans* are those who believe in Ma'homet, a religious impostor, who lived in Arabia about 600 years after Christ. *Pagans* are those who believe in false gods, and who worship idols.

**13. Land Divisions.**—The following are the five great divisions of the earth :

DIVISIONS.	Surface in English square miles.	Length of Coast Line.	Miles of Surface to one of Coast.	Population.	Population to sq. mile.	Mean Height above Sea.
Europe .....	3,820,000	19,780	193	260,000,000	68	671 feet.
Oceanica .....	4,100,000	—	—	25,000,000	6	—
Africa .....	11,570,000	16,200	714	100,000,000	8½	—
America .....	14,070,000	43,300	348	60,000,000	4½	N. A., 748; S.A., 1,132.
Asia .....	16,072,000	92,000	500	610,000,000	40	1,512.

## II. SKETCH OF GENERAL GEOGRAPHY.

### I. THE CONTINENT OF EUROPE.

**1. Europe**, with the smallest area, is the most important division of the Globe. It is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by the Mediterranean Sea, and on the east by the Caspian Sea, the Oural [Ural] River, and the Ural Mountains.

**2. Physical Features.**—Europe has four great mountain chains: (1) That between Norway and Sweden; (2) The Alps, north of Italy; (3) The Pyrenees, between France and Spain; (4) The Carpathian, north and east of Hungary. It is also noted for its numerous inland seas, bays, and gulfs, which give it peculiar advantages for commerce.

**3. The Principal European Seas** are the White Sea, north of Russia; German Ocean, between Britain and the Continent; Baltic Sea, between Denmark, Germany, Russia, and Sweden; Irish Sea and St. George's Channel, between Ireland and Britain; English Channel, between England and France; Mediterranean Sea, separating Europe and Africa; and the Black Sea and Sea of Azof, between Russia, Turkey-in-Europe, and Turkey-in-Asia.

**4. The Principal Gulfs and Bays** are the Gulf of Bothnia at the north, and the Gulfs of Finland and Riga, east of the Baltic; Cattegat and Skager Rack between the Baltic and North Sea; Bay of Biscay, or Gulf of France, west of France;

Gulf of Lyons, south of France; Gulf of Gen'oa, north-west of Italy; and the Gulf of Taranto, south of Italy.

**5. The Principal Straits** are the Sound, the Great Belt, and the Little Belt, outlets of the Baltic; Strait of Dover, connecting the North Sea and the English Channel; Strait of Gibraltar, inlet to the Mediterranean; Strait of Bonifacio, between Corsica and Sardinia; Faro-di-Messina, between Italy and Sicily; Strait of Otranto, entering the Adriatic Sea; the Dardanelles, between the Ægean Sea and the Sea of Mar'mora; Strait of Constantinople, or Bos'porus, entering the Black Sea; Strait of Kertch, or Yen-i-ka-leh, entering the Sea of Azof.

**Exercises.**—Mention the principal forms of religion. Give the land divisions of the earth and the boundaries, physical features, seas, gulfs, bays, and straits of Europe.

6. The Principal Islands in the *Arctic Ocean* are: Nova, Zembla, and Spitz-ber-gen; in the *Atlantic*, *Færoe* Isles, the British Isles, and the Açores [a-sores]; in the *Baltic*, Oland, Gottland, Oesel, Dago, and the Aland Isles; in the *Mediterranean*, the Balearic Isles; Corsica, Sardinia, Sicily, and Malta, off the coasts of Italy; Ionian Islands, off the coast of Greece; Crete, Negropont, and the Cyc-la-des, in the *Ægean Sea*.

7. The Principal Rivers are the Volga, Dan-ube, Dnieper [nee-per], Don, Rhine, and Dwi-na. The Volga and Dan-ube discharge nearly as much water as all the other rivers of Europe.

8. The Principal Lakes are the Wener and Wetter, in Sweden; Lad-o-ga, in Russia; Geneva, Constance, Zürich, Luzern, and Neu-châ-tel [new-sha-tel], in Switzerland; Maggiore [mad-jo-re], Como, and Garda, in northern Italy; and Neusiedler [noi-seed-ler] and Balaton in Austria.

9. Climate.—As Europe lies chiefly within a temperate zone, it is exempt from the extremes of heat and cold to which other divisions of the Globe are subject.

13. Countries.—Europe includes the following countries, with their capitals:

Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.
England	London.	Tuscany	Florence.	Sardinia	Turin.
Ireland	Dublin.	Papal States	Rome.	Saxony	Dresden.
Scotland	Edinburgh.	Two Sicilies	Naples.	The Netherlands	Amsterdam.
France	Paris.	Norway	Christiania.	Belgium	Brussels.
Russia	St. Petersburg.	Sweden	Stockholm.	Hanover	Hanover.
Austria	Vienna.	Denmark	Copenhagen.	Switzerland	Berne.
Prussia	Berlin.	Wurtemberg	Stuttgart.	Greece	Ath-ens.
Spain	Madrid.	Bavaria	Munich.	Turkey (in part)	Constantinople.

14. The British Empire embraces the British Islands, and the following Colonial possessions and dependencies of the Crown:

(1) In America, the five British North American Provinces, the Bermuda Isles, and several Islands of the West Indies; together with the Colony of Balize and the Ruatan Bay Islands, British Guiana, the Falkland Isles, &c. (See pages 13, 114.)

(2) In Europe, the Ionian Island de-

10. Productions.—Orange, citron, fig, vine, rice, and tobacco are cultivated in the south, but apples, pears, apricots, peaches, and walnuts are the principal fruits. The trees are the oak, beech, fir, chesnut, pine, &c. In the northern regions vegetation is more scanty. Wheat will not grow beyond the middle of Norway and Sweden. The principal mineral productions of Europe are iron, lead, copper, and tin; gold and silver being only found in small quantities. Coal is very abundant in Britain and Belgium; it is also found in France, Prussia, Austria, and Russia. Europe abounds in all the useful animals. Nearly all the wild animals and reptiles have disappeared. Birds are numerous.

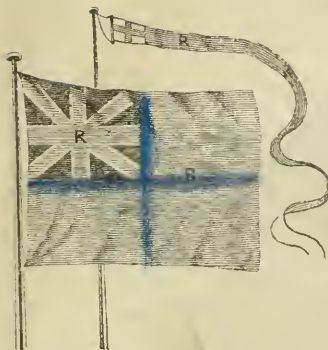
11. The Population of Europe is about 270,000,000. The most densely peopled countries are Belgium, Britain, and the Netherlands proper.

12. Religion.—The Christian religion under the three divisions of the Protestant, the Roman Catholic, and the Greek Churches, prevails in every part of Europe, except in Turkey, where a portion of the people are Mohammedans.

pendencies and Malta, in the Mediterranean; the Fortress and Town of Gibraltar, in Spain; the Islands in the English Channel; and the Island of Hel-i-go-land in the North Sea. (See pages 121, 122.)

(3) In Asia, British India; Ceylon; Labuan; the Isle of Perim; Aden, in

*Exercises.*—Give the islands, rivers, lakes, climate, productions, population, forms of religion, countries, and capitals of Europe. What is embraced in the British Empire?



RED ENSIGN AND PENNANT. [R. Red.]

Arabia; and the Island of Hong Kong, off the coast of China. (*See pages 115, 116.*)

(4.) **In Africa**, the Colonies of Natal, Kaffraria, the Cape of Good Hope, and Sierra Leone, and other settlements on the coast of the Gulf of Guinea [ghin-e]: together with the Islands of Mauritius [mau-rishé-us], Seychelles [sa shell], St. Helena, and Ascension off the east and west coast. (*See pages 119, 120.*)

(5) **In Oceanica**, New South Wales, Victoria, and the other Colonies in Australia; Tasmania, or New Zealand; and Norfolk Island. (*Pages 117, 118.*)

(6) **These Colonies**, together with the British Isles, constitute the British Empire. Their united area amounts to about 8,900,000 square miles, and their total population to upwards of one hundred and seventy millions.

**15. The British Islands** include the three kingdoms of England, Ireland, and Scotland, now united under one Sovereign and legislature. These islands are separated from Continental Europe by the North Sea, the Straits of Dover and the English Channel. Of the three kingdoms, England is the chief. London, the metropolis, is the greatest commercial city in the world, the seat of the legislature of the three kingdoms, and of the executive power of the Empire.

**16. Her Majesty the Queen**, as the head of the executive and the fountain of all dignity and honour, is the chief personage in the realm. Her official court is held at St. James' Palace, London. Her court is also held at Buckingham palace, near the city. Osborne, in the Isle of Wight, and Balmoral, in Scotland, are private residences. Her chief residence, Windsor Castle, situated on the Thames, was originally built by William the Conqueror.

**17. The British form of Government** is an hereditary, limited monarchy. The legislative power is vested in the Queen (in whose name all laws are promulgated); in the House of Lords (consisting of Bishops and Peers of the United Kingdom, certain representative Peers from Ireland and Scotland, and Bishops from Ireland); and in the House of Commons, consisting of 658 members, elected from the counties, cities, and boroughs of the three kingdoms.

**18. Colonial Governments.**—The Acts of the British Parliament extend only to the Colonies when specially passed for that purpose. The authority by which Canada, Newfoundland, and other Colonies assemble legislatures of their own and pass laws for their government, is derived from acts of the Imperial



*Exercises.*—Mention the names of the British Colonies and Dependencies. What is said of the flag, the British Islands, Her Majesty the Queen, and the British Government?



WINDSOR CASTLE, THE CHIEF RESIDENCE OF THE QUEEN.

Parliament. Some, however, derive this right from Royal Charter (or order in Council), modified by Acts of Parliament, such as Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, &c. The remainder are "Crown Colonies," the power to legislate for which is still vested in the Crown. The most important of the British Colonies are in North America.

## II. THE CONTINENT OF ASIA.

**19. Asia** is the largest division of the globe, and contains nearly half the human race. It was the first abode of man, the seat of his first empire, and the scene of most of the events recorded in Scripture. It is bounded by the Arctic Ocean on the north, the Pacific on the east, the Indian Ocean on the south, and by the Red Sea, the Isthmus of Suez, the Mediterranean Sea, Ægean Sea, Sea of Marmora, Black Sea, Cau-ca-si-an Mountains, Caspian Sea, Ural River, and Ural Mountains, on the west. The Isthmus of Suez joins Asia to Africa, and the Cau-ca-si-an and Ural Mountains connect it with Europe.

**20. The Principal Seas** to the west are the Black Sea, Marmora, Ægean, and Levant. To the south, the Arabian and Red Seas, Persian Gulf, and Bay of Bengal, To the east, the Chinese, Yellow, Japan, O-khotsk, and Kamt-schat-ka Seas.

**21. The Principal Straits** are the Bosphorus, Dar-da-nelles, Bab-el-Man-deb, or Gate of Tears, and Ormus, the Gulf of Manazr, Palk's Passage, Malacca, Formosa, Korea; Sangar, Perouse, and Beh-ring.

**22. The Principal Capes** are Baba,

*Exercises.*—Where is the Queen's court held, and where does she reside? What is said of Colonial governments? Give the boundaries of Asia, and enumerate the principal seas, &c., mentioned.



Com'orin, Romania, Cambo'dia, Lopatka. East Cape, North-East Cape, and Taimur.

**23. The Principal Islands in the Mediterranean** are Cyprus, Rhodes, Samos, Scio, and Mit-y-le-ne; in the *Indian Ocean*, Ceylon, the Laccadive, Maldive, and Chagos Ar-chi-pel-a-goes, Andaman, and Nicobar; in the *Pacific*, Hai-nan, Formosa, Loo Choo, Japan, and Kurile, Islands; in the *Arctic Ocean*, New Siberia.

**24. The Principal Mountains** are the Himalaya, Altai, Hindu-Koosh, Elburz, the Ghauts, Kurdistan, Caucasus, Armenian, and Taurus, Lebanon, and Sinai.

**25. The Principal Rivers** on the south slope are the Euphrates and Tigris, the Indus, Nerbudda, Cauvery, Go-dav-er-y, Ganges, Brah-ma-poo-tra, Irrawaddy, Cam-bo-dia; on the east slope, the Canton, Yang-tse-ki-ang, Ho-ang-ho, Pei-ho, Amoor; on the north slope, the Lena [la-na], Yen-i-sei, and the Obi; the inland rivers are: the Tarim, Oxus, Jax-ar-tes, Kur and the Jordan.

**26. The Principal Lakes** are the Baikal, the largest fresh water lake in the Old World, the Tcha-ny, Zaisan, Tong-ting, Po-yang, Gok-tcha, Sir-i-kol, 15,630 feet

high, at the source of the Oxus, the Manasarowar, 15,250 feet high at the source of the Sutlege; Caspian Sea, 83 feet below sea level, Aral, O-roo-mi-ah, and Van.

**27. Climate.**—Three-fourths of Asia lies within the north temperate zone, about one-eighth in the torrid zone, and the remainder in the north frigid zone. The climate varies accordingly. The season winds are called the *monsoons*, and their change is accompanied by violent storms.

**28. The Natural Productions** are rice, tea, cotton, myrrh, cocoa-nut, sago, ginger, orange, pepper, sugar-cane, sandal, wood; teak, bamboo, gam-bo-ge, cinnamon, aural, banyan, and elastic gum fig trees. Minerals are also very abundant. Coal is found in Asia Minor, India, China, and Siberia; gold in the Ural Mountains; iron in most states; and tin in the south-east. Animals. Including the pouched animals of Australia, Asia contains specimens of all most all the families of the animal kingdom.

**29. The Population** of Asia is estimated at 650,000,000, the most densely peopled countries being Hin-do-stan and China.

**30. Countries.**—Asia contains the following countries, with their capitals, viz. :

Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.
Russia in Asia .....	Tobolsk.	India—(continued)		Dutch Settlement...	Batavia.
China .....	Pekin.	Siam .....	Bankok.	Independent Tar-	
Persia .....	Teheran.	Burmah .....	Ava.	tary .....	Bokhara.
Arabia .....	Mecca.	Malay Peninsula.	Malacca.	Afghanistan .....	Cabool.
Turkey in Asia .....	Smyrna.	British India.....	Calcutta.	Belochistan .....	Kelat.
Japau .....	Yeddo.	Native States.....	(Various.)	Sandwich Islands...	Honolulu.
India :		Portuguese Settlement—Goa.		Australia .....	Various.
Anam.....	Hue.[hoo-a]	French do	Pondicherry	Other Islands.....	Various.

### III. THE CONTINENT OF AFRICA.

**31. Africa** is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean, on the west by the Atlantic, and on the east by the Indian Ocean and Red Sea.

**32. Natural Features.**—Africa forms an immense peninsula joined in Asia by the Isthmus of Suez. The north-western part, across which the immense desert of Sahara stretches, projects into the Atlantic; and the remainder, lying more to the west, tapers southwards between the Atlantic and Indian Oceans. The coast is bold and unbroken

*Exercises.*—Mention the principal capes, mountains, &c., of Asia. What is said of its climate, productions, and population? Give the countries and capitals of Asia, and the boundaries of Africa.

**33. The Principal Gulfs, Bays, &c.**, are the Gulfs of Si-dra, Kab'es, and Guinea, with the Bights of Benin and Biafra; St. Helena, False, and Algoa Bays; the Channel of Mozambique; with Delagoa and Sofala Bays, and the Red Sea.

**34. The Principal Capes** are Bon, Blanco, Spartel, Nun, Boj-a-dor, Verd, Palmas, Formosa, Kopez, Negro, Good Hope, Agulhas [a gool-yas], Corrientes, Delgado, Guardafui, Amber, and St. Mary.

**35. The Principal Mountains** are the Atlas, Kong, Cameroons, Neiuwveld, Sneeuwbergen [Snew-ber-gen] or Snowy Mountains, Drakenberg, Lupata, Kili-mandja-ro, Ke-ni-a, and the Abyssinian Mountains.

**36. The Principal Rivers** are the famous Nile, the Senegal, Gambia, Joliba, Quorra, or Niger, the Chad, Zaire, or Congo, the Coanza, Nourse, the Orange, Zambeze, Livuma, Lufidji, and Jubb.

**37. The Principal Lakes** are the Tsana, Debo, Melgig, Tchad, Nyassi, Ngami.

**33. The Climate.**—More than three-fourths of Africa lies in the torrid zone. The climate is therefore more hot and dry than in the other great divisions. There

are but two seasons, the dry and the rainy; the latter when the sun is nearest. The east belongs to the moonsoon region. Violent hurricanes occur in the south-east. Parching winds blow from Sahara desert.

**39. Productions.**—In northern Africa the chief grains are wheat, dourra, and barley. Oranges and olives are also found, and the cotton plant is also cultivated. The date palm abounds along the borders of the Sahara. In middle Africa, the food products towards the west are maize, rice, yams, bananas, and manioc. There are also gum acacias, and cotton trees, and the gigantic monkey bread tree, the butter tree, and the coffee plant.

**40. The Animals** are the lion, leopard, hyena, jackal, monkey, ape, elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, camel, giraffe, zebra, quagga, buffalo, crocodile, ostrich, &c.

**41. The Population** of Africa is estimated at 100,000,000. The people in the north belong to the Semitic family. In the middle the people are chiefly negroes. In the south, the people, with the exception of the Hottentots, are similar to the kaffres, or infidels.

**42. Countries.**—Africa contains the following countries, with their capitals:

Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.
Morocco .....	Morocco.	Abyssinia .....	Ankobar.	Upper Guinea...	Freetown and
Algeria .....	Algiers.	Central Africa...	Saccatoo and		Monrovia.
Tunis .....	Tunis.		Timbuctoo.	Lower Guinea...	Loango and
Tripoli .....	Tripoli.	Senegambia .....	Gorée and		Angola.
Egypt .....	Cairo [ki-ro].		Bathurst.	Southern Africa.	Cape Town, &c.
Nubia .....	Khartoom.			Madagascar .....	Ta-na-na-ri-vo.

#### IV. THE CONTINENT OF AMERICA.

**43. The Continent of America** stretches from the Arctic to the Southern Ocean. Its east side faces Europe and Africa, from which it is separated by the Atlantic Ocean; the west side is bounded by the Pacific Ocean, separating it from Asia and Oceanica.

**44. The Principal Gulfs, Bays, &c.**, in the north-east are Davis' Strait, Baffin, and Hudson's Bays; in the east, the Gulf of St. Lawrence, Fundy; Delaware, and Chesapeake Bays; between North and South America, Gulf of Mexico, Carib-

*Exercises.*—Mention the principal gulfs, bays, capes, mountains, rivers, and lakes of Africa. What is said of the climate, productions, animals, and population? Give the countries and their capitals.



bean Sea, and Gulfs of Honduras, Mosquito, and Darien; in the south east, Gulfs of San Matias and St. George, and Straits of Magalhaens [ma-jel-lan] and Le Maire; in the west, the Gulfs of Guayaquil [gw-i-a-keel], California, Queen Charlotte Sound, Behring's Strait.

**45. The Principal Islands** are Greenland, Cumberland, Newfoundland, Anticosti, Cape Breton, Prince Edward; the Bermudas, the West India, and Falkland Islands; the Patagonian Archipelago, including Terra del Fuego, and other smaller islands; Chloe, Juan Fernandez, Galapagos or Turtle Islands, Vancouver, Queen Charlotte, Sitka, and the Aleutian or Fox Islands.

**46. The Principal Peninsulas** are Boothia Melville, Labrador, Nova Scotia, Florida, Yucatan, South America, California, and Aljaska.

**47. The Principal Capes** are Lisbonne, Barrow, Bathurst, Farewell, Chudleigh, Charles, Race, Sable, Cod, Hatteras, San Antonio, Catoche, Gracias-a-Dios, San Roque, Frio, San Antonio, Corrientes, Cape Horn, San Lucas, Mendocino, and the Prince of Wales.

**48. The Mountains** in South America are called the Andes: the highest summit, Aconcagua, 23,910 feet, is east of Valparaiso. The Cordillera of Guatemala continues the range to the plateau of Mexico or Anahuac [an-a-wak]. From this plateau the Sierra de Sonora stretches north-west along the coast; and two parallel ranges, the Cordillera of Potosi and the Sierra Madre, extend northwards to a broad mass near the sources of the Missouri. The Rocky Mountains then extend north-west double chain, containing Mount Hooker in a and Mount Brown. From California northwards are the Sierra Nevada, the Cascade Range, with Mount Hood, and the Sea, Alps, in the north of which are Mount Fairweather and Mount Elias, the latter 17,860 feet high. The secondary ranges are the

Appalachian or Alleghany Mountains, in Canada and the United States; the Pa-ri me Mountains, and Sierra Es-pin-ha-ca, in Brazil.

**49. The Principal Rivers** in North America are the Colville, Mackenzie, Coppermine, Great Fish River; Churchill, Nelson, Severn, Albany, St. Lawrence, Hudson, Susquehanna, Mississippi, Colorado, Rio-Grande-del-Norte, Ohio, Red River, Arkansas, Missouri, Sacramento, Oregon, or Columbia, and Frazer. In South America: The Mag-da-le-ne, Oronoco, Amazon, Ucayali, [oo-ki-a'-le], Rio-de-la-Plata, Uruguay, Paraguay, Colorado, and Negro.

**50. The Natural Productions** include almost all the European grains and fruits. The indigenous plants are maize and tobacco: the manioc and cacao trees of the tropics; the cinchona, or Peruvian bark, and the potato of the Andes; the cow-tree of Guiana, and the ivory-palm, vanilla, jalap, and cactus plants of Mexico; the wax-myrtle and tulip-tree, and sugarmaple are found in the United States and in Canada; the passion-flower in Central America, the dahlia in Mexico, and the fuchsia in Peru. Cotton, coffee, and sugar are staple products in the tropics.

**51. Animals.**—North America has numerous fur-bearing animals; also the wolf and bear, the bison and musk-ox, the reindeer, elk, wapiti, and moose-deer; and the wild goat and sheep of the rocky Mountains. To South America belong the tapir, sloth, armadillo, llama, and alpaca. The more remarkable birds are the condor, the rhea or American ostrich, humming-birds, and the turkey. Serpents, alligators, turtles, and lizards also abound.

**52. Inhabitants.**—The aborigines of North America are called Indians. Those in Mexico and Peru were formerly civilized and had large towns and fixed governments. The Indians now constitute only about one-sixth of the population.

*Exercises.*—Give the boundaries, gulfs, bays, islands, peninsulas, capes, mountains, and rivers of America. What is said of its natural productions, animals, and inhabitants?

**53. America** contains the following countries, with their capitals:

Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.	Country.	Capital.
North America:		Honduras ..... Comayagu. [ko-mi-ag-wa.]		Hayti ..... Port au Prince.	
Russ. America. New Archangel.		Brit. Honduras Belize.		South America:	
Greenland..... Frederickshavn		Nicaragua ..... Leon.		New Granada.. Bogota.	
Hudson's Bay. York Factory.		Costa Rica..... San Jose.		Venezuela ..... Caraccas.	
Newfoundland St. John's.		San Salvador... San Salvador.		Guiana ..... Various.	
P. E. Island.... Charlottetown.		Mosquito ..... Greytown.		Brazil ..... Rio Janeiro.	
Nova Scotia.... Halifax.		Panama ..... Pan-a-ma.		Uruguay ..... Montevideo.	
New Brunswick Fredericton.		West India Islands;		La Plata..... Buenos Ayres.	
Lower Canada. Quebec.		British Antilles Spanish Town.		[boo-nus-a-ris]	
Upper Canada. Toronto.		Danish do St. Thomas.		Patagonia ..... Port St. Julian.	
United States. Washington.		Swedish do St. Bartholomew		Chili ..... Santiago.	
Mexico ..... Mexico.		French do Basse Terre.		Bolivia, Chuquisaca. [choo-ke-	
Central America;		Dutch do Williamstadt.		Peru ..... Lima. sa-ke]	
Yucatan..... Merida.		Spanish do Havana.		Ecuador ..... Quito.	
Guatemala .... New Guatemala				Paraguay ..... Assumption.	

**III. NORTH AMERICA.**

**1. North America.**—The Northern portion of the Continent of America, which stretches from the Arctic regions to the tropics, contains, according to the latest authorities, 8,325,000 square miles of surface.

**2. The Political Divisions** of North America include the following areas:

Area.	Square miles.	Area.	Square miles.	Area.	S. miles.
British America.....	2,897,560	Russian America.....	481,286	Arctic Lands.....	600,000
United States.....	2,936,116	Danish America (Greenland)	280,000	French Fishing Islands.....	118
Mexico (fm. Mexitli; Aztec Mars) 329,913		Central America.....	800,000		
				Total square miles.....	8,325,000

**3. The United States** are bounded on the north by British America, on the east by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by the Gulf of Mexico and Mexico, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

**4. Old Colonies.**—Thirteen of these States were originally British Colonies. They declared their independence in 1776, and it was acknowledged by Great Britain in 1783.

**Natural Features.**—The territory of the United States is divided into three great natural sections: 1. the Atlantic Slope; 2. the Mississippi Valley; and, 3. the Pacific Slope. The general character of the country is that of an immense plain, traversed by two chains of mountains—the Alleghany and the Rocky Mountains.

**6. Inhabitants.**—The United States were at first principally settled by emigrants from Great Britain. The population now consists of descendants of people from every country in Europe, and numbers upwards of 23,000,000, including Negroes, and Indians.

**7. Government.**—The several States are united under one general government, called a Federal Republic. Each State has a government of its own, but the more

general concerns of the nation are entrusted to the central government. This government consists of three branches, viz., the Legislative, the Executive, and the Judicial power. The Legislative power is vested in Congress, which consists of two branches—the Senate and the House of Representatives. The Executive power is vested in a President and Vice-President, elected for four years, assisted by five Secretaries. The Judicial power is vested in

*Exercises.*—Mention the countries in America and their Capitals. Give the boundaries of North America and the United States. What is said of their natural features, inhabitants, and governments?

one supreme court, thirty-one district courts, and seven circuit courts. The present Constitution of the United States went into operation in March, 1789.

**8. Extent.**—To the 13 original States, 18 new ones have since been added, making a total of 31 States. Besides these, there are ten Territories and one district, called Co-lum-bia. Washington, the capital of the Republic, is in this District.

**9. These Thirteen States** are: Del-a-ware, Penn-syl-va-ni-a, New Jersey, Georgi-a, Con-nect-i-cut, Mas-sa-chu-setts, Rhode Island, Maryland, North and S. Car-o-li-na, New Hamp-shire, Vir-gin-i-a, and New York.

**10. The new States** are: Ver-mont, Ken-tuck-y, Ten-nes-see, Ohio, Lou-is-i-a-na, In-di-an-a, Mis-sis-sip-pi, Il-lin-ois, Ala-ba-ma, Maine, Mis-sou-ri, Ar-kan-sas, Mich-i-gan, Flor-i-da, Tex-as, I-o-wa, Wis-con-sin, and Cal-i-for-ni-a.

**11. The Territories** are: Or-e-gon, Min-ne-so-ta, De-co-tah, Utah, New Mex-i-co, A-ri-zo-na, Wash-ing-ton, Ne-bras-ka, Kan-sas, and the Indian territories.

**12. State Divisions, &c.**—The popular divisions of the States are the six Eastern, or New England States, extending from Maine to Connecticut; five Middle States, from New York to Maryland; nine Southern States, from Virginia

to Texas. All the other States are called Western and South Western. Each State has its own independent legislature, judiciary, and executive government, consisting of a Senate and a House of Assembly, a Governor, Judges, &c., who have the power to make, judge of, and execute all laws pertaining to the State, except such as belong to the general government. The chief officer of a State is styled the Governor. Each State is for the most part divided into counties, and the counties into townships, as in Canada. In population, wealth, and importance, New York and Pennsylvania rank first. Ohio, Virginia, and Massachusetts are next in order. In most of the States there is a fund for the support of schools, and education is widely diffused, especially in the Northern States.

**13. Chief Cities.**—Washington, the political capital, has a population of 40,000; New York the commercial capital, 620,000; Boston, 140,000; Philadelphia, 410,000; Baltimore, 170,000; New Orleans, 154,000; St. Louis, 80,000; Cincinnati, 117,000; and San Francisco, California, 60,000.

**14. Border Cities.**—The chief cities on the Canadian border are: Detroit, Cleveland, Buffalo, Rochester, and Ogdensburgh. Portland, in Maine, is connected with Canada, by the Grand Trunk Railway.

**15. British North America** contains nearly the same area as the United States, But the northern portion is not equally available for the purposes of agriculture or commerce. The estimated population is 3,500,000.

**16. The Political Divisions of British North America** include the following areas:

Area.	Square miles.	Area.	Square miles.	Area.	S. miles.
Canada (Upper and Lower) ..	357,822	New Brunswick .....	27,620	Newfoundland .....	36,000
Nova Scotia and Cape Breton	18,746	Prince Edward Island .....	2,173	Hudson's Bay Territory .....	2,436,000

Total square miles.....2,897,580

**17. Canada**, the most important of the British Colonies, is divided into two parts,—Upper and Lower, or Eastern and Western. The river Ottawa is the great central boundary between them. Its estimated population, in 1858, is 2,578,000. The number of square miles and the acres of surface included in these divisions are as follows:

	Square miles.	Acres.	Population.		Square miles.	Acres.	Population.
Upper Canada....	147,832	77,606,400	1,350,900	Lower Canada....	209,990	134,412,800	1,321,000

*Exercises.*—Name the old and new States and territories. What are their popular divisions, and how is each State governed? Mention the chief cities. What is said of British America and Canada?

## V. UPPER CANADA.

**Extent.**—Upper Canada, the most fertile of the British North American Colonies, presents the appearance of a triangular peninsula. It is generally considered to extend from  $42^{\circ}$  to  $51^{\circ}$  north latitude, and from nearly  $74^{\circ}$  to  $90^{\circ}$  west longitude, from Greenwich.

**19. Boundaries.**—It is bounded on the north and east by the Hudson's Bay Territory and the river Ottawa; on the south by Lakes Superior, Huron, Ontario, and Erie; and on the west by the Western Indian Territories, Lakes Superior, Huron, St. Clair, and the rivers St. Clair and Detroit.

**20. Size.**—It is about 750 miles in length from south-east to north-west; and from 200 to 300 miles in width. Its north-western boundaries are, however, indefinite.

### I. PHYSICAL FEATURES.

**21. The Surface of Upper Canada** for the most part is gently undulating, rather than hilly or mountainous, and is agreeably diversified by rivers and lakes. The escarpment, which enters the Province at the Falls of Niagara, extends to Ancaster, Hamilton, and Dundas, and forming the Blue Ridge, is continued to Owen's Sound, thence to Cabot's Head, and through the Manitoulin Islands. The Laurentide Hills run westward from the Thousand Islands, and extend north of Lake Simcoe, forming the east of Lake Huron to Shebehahning. Beyond this, the Lacloche Mountains of the Huronian age, present an elevation of 1,300 feet above the sea, and a table-land exists between Lake Huron and Lake Superior. Between the Laurentides and the St. Lawrence and its lakes, Upper Canada generally presents a level surface, with a rich and fertile soil, admirably adapted to the pursuits of agriculture.

**22. Geology.**—In Upper Canada, the Laurentian system occupies the north, while the more horizontal surface on the south is underlaid by Silurian and Devonian deposits. Lake Superior, Georgian Bay, Lake Simcoe, and Lake Ontario are excavated out of the Lower Silurian deposits and the main body of Lake Huron and Lake Erie out of the Devonian. The Upper Silurian strata compose the ridge of land separating these two ranges of water. The iron-bearing Laurentian rocks are described at page 28, § 4. The Huronian are interposed between them and the Silurian; their eastern boundary runs from Lacloche to Lake Temiscamang; and they occupy the country westward to Lake Superior, and along its north coast. They consist of sandstones, silicious slates, and conglomerates, of which the pebbles are quartz, jasper, syenite, and gneiss. They are greatly interstratified and intersected with trap and other volcanic rocks, but they are not so much altered and disturbed as the Laurentian series. They abound in copper ores, with which are associated those of iron, lead, zinc, nickel, and silver; and they afford agates, jasper, amethysts, and other hard stones capable of ornamental application. Like the Laurentian, these rocks are without fossils. The Silurian and Devonian series rest unconformably on the Laurentian and Huronian, in an attitude nearly horizontal, and appear to have suffered no disturbance since they were deposited. They abound in beautiful and characteristic fossils and are largely composed of limestone. A band of this rock, 140 feet thick, and underlaid by fifty or sixty feet of shale, exhibits a proof of the retrocession of the Niagara Falls. The water, precipitated over the limestone, which dips gently up the river wears the shale from beneath it; and the calcareous rock, thus deprived of support, breaks vertically off in great masses. A similar action, going on for ages, has produced the retrocession. The economic minerals of the Silurian and Devonian series are freestone and limestone, for building; marble, lithographic stone, hydraulic cement, and gypsum. The drift formation is accumulated to a great thickness over the harder rocks in the level part of Upper Canada; and one of the geological phenomena connected with it is a succession of terraces, shewing ancient beaches, which mark the gradual recession of the water, as the continent arose from beneath a tertiary sea. Besides the marine remains mentioned in connection with the drift of Lower Canada, that of Upper Canada

*Exercises.*—Give the extent, boundaries, and size of Upper Canada. Describe its surface and geology. What is said of the retrocession of the Falls of Niagara?



displays the bones of mammoths and other land animals. The drift produces clay for red and white bricks and for common pottery; and supports patches of bog iron ore, fresh water shell-marl, and peat; while petroleum, in some places, oozes up to the surface, from bituminous rocks beneath, and give origin to beds of asphalt.

**23. The Water-Sheds** of Upper Canada, though of course the highest land between the hydrographical basins they separate, are not in general sharp ridges but are often extensive, rather level, and often marshy surfaces, on which the streams interlock. A main one is that one separating the waters of the Ottawa from those of the St. Lawrence and its lakes; a minor one divides the streams flowing into the Bay of Quinté, Lake Simcoe, and Lake Erie, from those flowing into Lake Ontario, above the Peninsula of Prince Edward.

**24. Lakes.**—The magnificent Lakes which form the southern and western boundaries of Upper Canada contain nearly half the fresh water on the globe. Their total length is 1,083 miles (or to the ocean, 1,534), and they cover an area of 80,000 square miles.

Names.	Length in Miles.	Greatest Width in Miles.	Area in Square Miles.	Height above Sea, Feet.	Mean Depth, Feet.
1. Superior .....	353	160	32,000	627	988
2. Huron, including Georgian Bay...	280	190	20,000	578	300
3. St. Clair .....	20	36	360	571	20
4. Erie .....	250	80	9,000	555	200
5. Ontario .....	180	65	6,000	230	500

**25. Su-per-ior** is first in size. It drains an area of 100,000 square miles; and 200 streams (thirty of them large) flow into it. The islands are numerous. The chief one is Isle Royal. The northern shore of this lake is bold and rocky, with cliffs rising from 300 to 1,500 feet in height. The south shore is low and sandy, but broken in some places by limestone ridges, called the Pictured Rocks, which are 300 feet high, and marked with caverns and projections. This lake empties into Lake Huron by the Sault Sté. Marie. Chief products are white-fish, trout, and sturgeon. Copper is found in great abundance on its shores and islands.

**26. Hu'-ron** is second in size, and receives the waters of Lakes Superior and Michigan, with those of the Maitland, Saugueen, Severn, and French rivers. There are good harbors on its coasts. Its waters are singularly clear and transparent. It contains about 3,000 islands: the chief of which are Man-i-ton-lin, Cockburn, Drummond, St. Joseph. It is separated from the Georgian Bay by the Peninsula north of the County of Bruce. Its chief product is white-fish, which are very abundant.

**27. St. Clair** is fifth in size, but next

in order. It receives the waters of Lake Huron through the St. Clair river; also the Clinton (United States), Thames, and Sydenham rivers. Its chief islands are Parsons (United States), Walpole, &c.

**28. E'-rie** is third in size. It receives, through the Detroit river, the waters of the upper lakes. The rivers Maumee, Sandusky, Huron, and Raisin (United States), flow into it; also the Ouse, or Grand river. The Western extremity is shallow, and is frozen in winter. It is subject to severe storms.

**29. On'-tario** is the last of the great chain of lakes, and the fourth in size. The waters of the other lakes flow into it through the Niagara river, and over the celebrated Falls. It also receives the Genesee, Oswego, and Black rivers (United States.) It never freezes, except near the shore. Its chief products are salmon, bass, &c.

**30. Nip'-is-sing**, the largest interior lake in Upper Canada, is situated N.E. of Georgian Bay, into which it discharges its waters by the French river. It is 647 feet above the sea, 41 miles in length, and from 12 to 18 miles in width. It is studded with numerous islands.

**31. Sim'-coe** (Sim-ko), situated south-

*Exercises.*—What is said of the water-sheds? Give the aggregate length, size, and area of the great lakes. What is said of Lakes Superior, Huron, St. Clair, Erie, Ontario, Nipissing, and Simcoe?

east of Georgian Bay, into which it empties itself by Lake Couch-i-ching, the river Severn, and Match-e-dash Bay. The waters of this lake are deep and transparent. It contains several islands; the chief of which are Canise, Graves, and Snake. It is 30 miles long by 18 wide; covers an area of 300 square miles, and is 770 feet above the level of the sea. Its principal tributaries are the Holland and Beaver rivers.

**32. Rice Lake**, which is 20 miles in

length and five wide, may be considered rather as one of the numerous expansions of the River Trent, in its course towards the Bay of Quinté. This lake is situated between Cobourg and Peterboro'.

**33. Minor Lakes.**—The chief remaining lakes are Couch-i-ching, Scu-gog, Balsam, Fenelon, Sturgeon, Pigeon, Buckhorn, Chemong, Salmon, Trout, Ebony, White, Crooked, Loughboro', Burgess; and those in the Ottawa and St. Lawrence rivers.

**34. The Principal Rivers in Upper Canada** are the Rideau, (Re-doo) Mad-a-was-ka, Bonnechère, Pet-ah-wah-weh, French, Sturgeon, Ma-gan-é-ta-wan, Mus-ko-ka, Severn, Not-ta-wa-saga, Sau-geen, Maitland, Aux-Sables [O-Sab'l], Sydenham, Thames, Ouse or Grand River, Welland, Credit, Humber, O-ton-a-bee, Trent, and Moi-ra.

**35. Boundary Rivers.**—Those larger rivers which form the boundary lines of Upper Canada and the United States, are the St. Clair, Detroit, Niagara, and the St. Lawrence; and of Upper and Lower Canada, the Ottawa.

**36. The St. Clair** is 25 miles long and wide. Through it the waters of Lakes Superior and Huron pass into Lake Erie



PART OF THE FALLS OF NIAGARA, AND THE GREAT WESTERN RAILWAY SUSPENSION BRIDGE.

*Exercises.*—What is said of Rice Lake and of the minor lakes? Give the names of, and trace on the map, the principal rivers and the boundary rivers mentioned. Describe the river St. Clair.

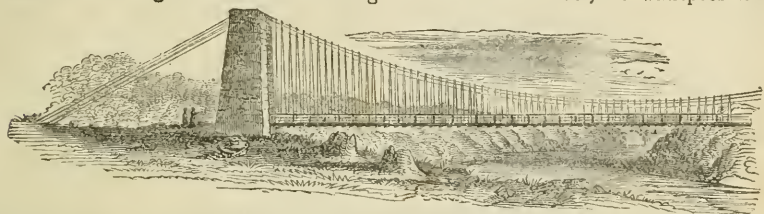


through Lake St. Clair and the Detroit river. There are many springs in the bed of the river, causing considerable agitation in its waters. At its mouth are three islands: St. Ann's and Walpole (belonging to Upper Canada), and Parsons (belonging to the United States.)

**37. The De-troit** is 23 miles long and from one to two miles wide. The American city of Detroit is on its west bank. It contains numerous islands, the chief of which are the Pearl, Fighting, and Bois Blanc (white wood.) Detroit means a strait.

**38. The Ni-ag-a-ra** is 34 miles long

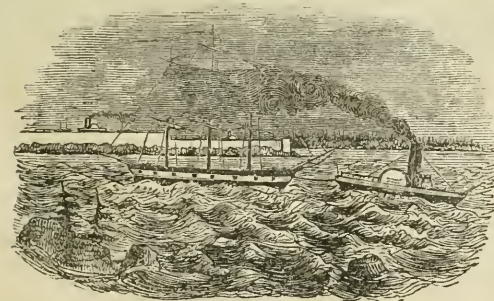
and from 600 feet to three miles wide. The Falls, which occur 20 miles from its head and 14 from its mouth, are the most celebrated in the world. They are 165 feet in height, and are divided by Goat Island into the American (920 feet wide), and the Canadian, or, from its shape, Horse Shoe Falls (1,900 feet wide.) The river here is three-quarters of mile in width. The Rapids, immediately above the Falls, descend 57 feet in half a mile. There are several islands in the river. Grand, Navy, Goat, and Iris are the principal ones. Besides the Falls themselves, the whirlpool is an



PASSENGER SUSPENSION BRIDGE AT QUEENSTON.

object of interest. There are two suspension bridges over the river: a passenger bridge at Queenston and a railway and passenger bridge at Clifton. It is proposed

to erect two additional bridges over the Niagara river, one near Clifton, the other at Fort Erie. The river is navigable up to Queenston, seven miles from its mouth; and down to Chippewa, eighteen miles from its head, at the east end of Lake Erie.



RAPIDS AND CANAL ON THE ST. LAWRENCE.

**39. The St. Lawrence** issues from Lake Ontario, at Kingston, where it was originally called the Iroquois or Ca-ta-ra-qui river. It is 750 miles long. The descent to Montreal, 200 miles, is 230 feet, and to tide water, 234 feet. The chief rapids in Upper Canada are the Galops and Long Sault; and the Côteau, Cèdres, Cascades, and Lachine, in Lower Canada. These are overcome by canals. The lakes in the river are the beautiful Lake of the

*Exercises.*—Describe the Detroit river. What is said of the Niagara river; its wonders, and the two Suspension Bridges? Trace the St. Lawrence, and describe its rapids and islands.

Thousand Isles, in Upper Canada; and Lakes St. Francis and St. Louis, in Lower Canada. In addition to the Thousand Islands, of which there are 1692, the other principal islands are Wolfe, Howe (Carleton, Ogden, Croyles Long Sault, Barnharts, in United States), Shrecks, and Cornwall, in Upper Canada. The remainder of the river belongs exclusively to Lower Canada. (*See page 29.*)

**40. The Ot-ta-wa.**—This great Canadian river rises 100 miles above Lake Temis-ca-ming (which is 67 miles long, by six wide), and flows to Montreal, a distance of 450 miles. It drains an area of 80,000 square miles. The chief tributaries on the western, or Upper Canada side, are the Pet-ah-wab-weh, 109 miles long; the Bonne-chère 110 miles; Mad-a-was-ka, 210 miles; and Rideau, 116 miles. On the eastern, or Lower Canada side, are the Du Moins, 90 miles long; Black, 130 miles; Coulonge,

100 miles; Gatineau, 420 miles; Le Lièvre 260 miles; Du Nord, 160 miles; and L'Assomption, 130 miles. The principal islands are Allumette and Calumet. The lake expansions of the river are Coulonge, Des Châts, Chaudière, and Two Mountains. There are numerous rapids and falls in the river. The chief rapids are the Long Sault at Temiscaming, 49 feet; the Levier, &c., 34 feet; and the Long Sault, at Grenville. The falls are the Allumettes, Des Châts, Chaudière, &c. The scenery on the river is striking and beautiful. The Ottawa falls into the St. Lawrence by a threefold branch: the main stream, to the north, is divided by the Isle Jésus; its southern branch is also divided by the Isle Perrot. At the middle entrance, between the Isles Perrot and Montreal, occur the Rapids of Ste. Anne, which have been rendered famous by Moore's "Canadian Boat Song."



STE. ANNE'S RAPIDS, AT THE JUNCTION OF THE OTTAWA AND ST. LAWRENCE RIVERS.

**41. The Trent** is the most important inland river in Upper Canada. It is about 100 miles long; and in its course expands

into numerous beautiful lakes. (*See No. 33, page 16.*) It falls into the Bay of Quinté, at Trenton.

**42. Bays.**—The principal bays are the Georgian, Not-ta-wa-sa-ga, Match-e-dash, Owen Sound, Burlington, Toronto, Quinté, Presqu'île, &c.

**43. Geor-gi-an Bay** is a vast inlet from Lake Huron. It is 120 miles long by 20 wide, and has an area of 6,000 square miles. The north-eastern portion of the bay is called the North Channel, and has an area of 1,700 square miles.

**44. Not-ta-wa-sa-ga** is the southern portion of Georgian Bay. Match-e-dash Bay is to the north-east, and Owen Sound to the north-west of it.

**45. Burlington Bay**, near the city of Hamilton, is a triangular sheet of water at

*Exercises.*—Trace the course of the Ottawa river and its tributaries. What are the rapids and falls mentioned? Trace the river Trent. Which are the chief bays? Describe them.

the western extremity of Lake Ontario. It is about five miles across. The entrance to it is through the Burlington Canal.

**46. Quinte'.—**This is a beautiful river-

shaped bay. It extends westward, from Kingston, about 70 miles, including its windings. The name is doubtless of Indian origin, with a French pronunciation.

**47. Islands.—**The principal islands in Upper Canada are the Great Calumet and Allumette, *Ottawa River*; Man-i-tou-lin, Cockburn [Coburn], St. Joseph, and Fitzwilliam, *Lake Huron*; Pelée and Ryerson Islands, *Lake Erie*; Navy, in the *Niagara River*; Amherst, Tonti, Wolfe, and Howe, at the east end of *Lake Ontario*; and part of the Thousand Islands, at the entrance to the river *St. Lawrence*.

**48. Man-i-tou-lin.—**This is a remarkable group of islands in Lake Huron. The chief one—called the Great Man-i-tou-lin, or Sacred Isle—is 80 miles long by 20 broad, and includes an area of 1,600 square miles. It has numerous bays. The surface is elevated and rugged. The principal settlement on the island is at Mau-i-tou-ah-ning. Remnants of the Ottawa, Chippewa or Odjibway, Saugeen and Pot-to-wat-tamie, or

St. Clair Indians, were collected here in 1835, under the authority of the Government, to receive their yearly presents, instead of at Pen-e-tan-gui-shene, as formerly.

**49. The Thousand Isles.—**This cluster of islands, which imparts such beauty to the scenery of the St. Lawrence, is situated at the entrance of that river. They are 1,692 in number—part belonging to the United States and part to Canada.

## II. CLIMATE AND NATURAL PRODUCTIONS.

**50. Climate.—**The climate of Upper Canada, though inclined to be extreme in winter and summer, is singularly tempered by the influence of the great lakes. It is milder than that of Lower Canada, or than that of many of the American States in the same latitude. The dryness and clearness of the atmosphere render Upper Canada healthy and agreeable as a place of residence. The Indian summer, which generally occurs in October, is a delightful time of the year. The sleighing season, in winter, is also a pleasant period. Rains are abundant in spring and autumn. Fogs are rare. The hottest months of summer are July and August, and the coldest months of winter are January and February.

**51. Mineral.—**Upper Canada is rich in minerals. Iron is found chiefly in Marmora, Crosby, Hull, Belmont, and Madoc; silver and copper at Lake Superior; gypsum at the Grand river; sandstone in the Niagara ridge; Sandstone for glass at Cayuga; limestone at Malden, Kingston, Rama and Ottawa; flagstone at Toronto; whitestone at Madoc and Fitzroy; fuller's earth at Nassaga-

weya; moulding sand at Augusta; white brick-clay at London, Toronto, Cobourg, and Peterboro'; marble at Elzevir, the Ottawa, Cornwall, and Pakenham; peat in the counties of Welland, Renfrew, and Prescott.

**52. The Mineral Springs** are as follows: 1. *Saline*, at Ancaster, Alfred, Caledonia, Plantagenet, Gloucester, Kingston, L'Orignal, Fitzroy, Pakenham, Westmeath;

*Exercises.*—What is said of the islands of Upper Canada; the climate, and its peculiarities? What are the chief mineral products? What do you know of their value?



2. *Sulphuric Acid* or *Sour Springs*, at Tuscarora, Niagara, Chippewa, and St. David's; 3. *Sulphur and Gas*, at Caledonia; 4. *Sulphur*, at Charlotteville; 5. *Oil (Petroleum)*, at Mosa, Lake Huron, and Eunniskillen; 6. *Bituminous*, at Niagara Falls.

53. **Vegetable.**—Wheat is the staple product; barley, oats, rye, peas, buckwheat, Indian corn, and all other domestic vegetables, are raised in abundance. Hemp, flax, hops and tobacco are easily cultivated in the western parts of Upper Canada. Maple sugar, Canada balsam, lobelia, gentian, ginseng, &c., also deserve notice.

54. **The Cultivated Fruits** are apples, pears, plums, cherries, raspberries, currants, and strawberries. The peach grows well and in abundance in the Niagara peninsula.

55. **Wild Fruit** are; whortleberries [called Huckleberries], blueberries, choke-

cherries, cranberries, raspberries; chesnuts, hazel nuts, beech nuts, hickory nuts, &c.

56. **Timber.**—Pine and oak are abundant. Among the other more valuable descriptions of timber in Upper Canada are walnut, cherry, maple, cedar, ash, elm, birch, &c.

57. **The Chief Wild Flowers** are the wild rose, the sweet-brier, pitcher plant, lily, dandelion, iris, milk-weed, mullein, everlasting, mallow, touch-me-not, &c.\*

58. **Wild Animals.**—The bear, racoon, weasel, mink; Canada lynx, or wild cat; wolf, fox, wood-chuck, porcupine; black gray, brown, and flying squirrels; chipmunk; the beaver, otter, musk-rat, &c.

59. **Game.**—Red or fallow deer, turkeys, grouse, pigeons, wood-cock, snipe, plover.

60. **Birds.**—The eagle, hawk, owl, thrush, crow, humming-bird, king-fisher, swallow, whip-poor-will, blue-bird, star-



THE BEAVER (*Castor fiber*.)



MAPLE LEAF  
(*Acer saccharinum*.)

The Beaver and the Maple leaf are Canadian national emblems. The beaver is indicative of industry, and the maple-tree of productiveness, from its sugar-producing qualities.

\* **POISONOUS PLANTS.**—In order that children may be cautioned against picking up poisonous plants found in the woods, road-sides, and fields, we insert the following list: Thorn apple, poison ivy, poison sumach, deadly night-shade, monk's hood, American hemlock, dropwort, cowbane, henbane, fool's parsley, spurge (various kinds), dragon root (or Indian turnip), cuckoo pint, northern calla, blood root, poke, Indian tobacco, skunk cabbage, wood anemone, crowfoot, hellebore, meadow saffron, mezereon, dog's mercury, celandine, dwarf elder, black bryony, wild parsnip, acrid lobelia, poppy, and the various kinds of fungi, or toads' stools, so often mistaken for mushrooms.

**Exercises.**—What mineral springs are there? Name the principal cultivated and wild fruits, timber, wild flowers, animals, game, birds, and poisonous plants. What is said of the illustrations?

ling, joy, robin, meadow-lark, tanager, gold-finch, oriole, woodpecker, gull, &c.

**61. Reptiles.**—River tortoise, or snapping turtle; marsh and land turtle; rattlesnake; garter, green, black, milk, and copper snake; frog; lizard; lake proteus, &c.

**62. Fish.**—Speckled trout, salmon trout,

white-fish (called by the Indians At-ti-kumaig, or “deer of the waters”), perch, bass, pike, sturgeon, maskinongé, pickerel, eel, &c.

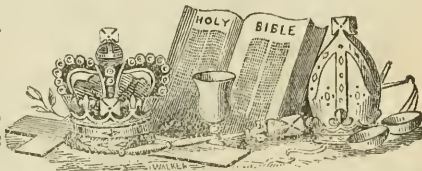
**63. Insects.**—Beetle, ear-wig, grasshopper, cricket, dragon-fly, ant, hornet, wasp, bee, butterfly, moth, gnat, mosquito, fly, Hessian fly, midge, weevil, &c.

### III. POPULATION, RELIGION, AND EDUCATION.

**64. Population.**—Upper Canada is chiefly settled by emigrants from the British Isles. In 1780-3, a great number of the United Empire Loyalists, who had remained faithful to the British Crown during the American revolution, settled in various parts of the Province. The census of 1851-2, gives an analysis of the origin of races, and of the population of Upper Canada, as follows (or, as estimated in 1858, 1,350,900) :

Anglo-Canadians .....	523,093	French Canadians .....	25,417	From France and Belgium...	1,070
From Ireland .....	176,267	Germans & Hollanders .....	9,557	Natives of other places....	3,612
“ England and Wales .....	82,699	From Nova Scotia and .....	3,785	Indians, 3,065, Colored, 2,095=	5,160
“ Scotland .....	75,811	Prince Edward Island .....	2,634	Total population.....	952,004
“ United States.....	43,732	From New Brunswick...			

**65. Religion.**—Each religious persuasion is on an equality. With the settlement of the Clergy Reserves question, all “semblance of connection between Church and State” was said to have been abolished. According to the census of the year 1851-2, the religious denominations were as follows :



Church of England (three dioceses) .....	223,190	Presbyterians :		Mennonites and Tunkers .....	8,230
Ch. of Rome (5 dioceses) .....	167,695	Church of Scot-		Quakers.....	7,460
Methodists :		land .....	57,542	Congregationalists.....	7,747
Wesleyan .....	96,640	Presb. Church of		Bible Christians .....	5,726
Episcopal .....	43,884	Canada .....	65,817	Christian Church .....	3,093
New Connexion..	7,547	Other.....	80,799	Universalists .....	2,684
Other Methodists .....	69,585		204,148	Others not reported .....	55,933
—207,656		Baptists .....	45,353	Total .....	952,004
		Lutherans.....	12,089		

**66. Education.**—By the munificence of the Legislature, Upper Canada possesses abundant facilities for Education, in the primary, superior, and collegiate department. There are also many excellent private academies, seminaries, and schools, throughout the Province.

**67. The Universities** are : The Uni- at Toronto; of Victoria College, at Co- versity of Toronto and of Trinity College, bourg; and of Queen's College, at Kingston.

*Exercises.*—Mention the reptiles, fish, and insects. How was Upper Canada settled? Who were the United Empire Loyalists? Give the population, &c. What are the Educational advantages?



**68. Colleges.**—University College, Upper Canada, Knox, and St. Michael's, Toronto, Regiopolis, Kingston; and Bytown, Ottawa.

**69. Grammar Schools.**—Eighty-three have been established—one or more in each county. They connect the Common School with the University, and are managed by local Boards of Trustees, but are inspected by a provincial officer. They report to the Chief Superintendent, and receive aid through his department. The senior County Schools are Meteorological Stations.

**70. Seminaries** are established at Belleville, Picton, Georgetown, Brantford, &c.; and ladies' academies, in various places.

**71. The Common Schools** are aided by the Legislature, and are each managed by Trustees, chosen by the people, and in-

spected by a local superintendent. About 3,600 have been established in Upper Canada. All the teachers are licensed by local boards, except those trained and licensed at the Provincial Normal School, Toronto.

**72. The Educational Department,** situated at Toronto, is presided over by a Chief Superintendent of Education (appointed by the Crown), aided by a Council of Public Instruction. To him is confined the administration of the laws relating to grammar and common schools. He also distributes the legislative school grants, besides appeals, and issues a monthly *Journal of Education* for the public schools.



#### IV. CIVIL DIVISIONS.

**73. Cities and Towns.**—The cities are Ottawa, Kingston, Toronto, Hamilton, and London. The chief towns are given below.

**74. Counties.**—Upper Canada is divided into 42 counties as follows:

Counties.	Area in sq. miles surveyed.	Population in 1851-2.	Chief Towns.	Counties.	Area in sq. miles surveyed.	Population in 1851-2.	Chief Towns.
Addington .....	576	15165	Bath, v.	Middlesex .....	1079	39899	London.
Brant .....	416	25426	Brantford.	Northumberland.	730	31229	Cobourg.
Bruce .....	992	2827	Walkerton, v.	Norfolk .....	690	21251	Simcoe.
Carleton .....	898	31397	Ottawa.	Ontario .....	851	30576	Whitby.
Durham .....	620	30732	Port Hope.	Oxford .....	710	32633	Woodstock.
Dundas .....	377	13811	Morrisb'gh, v.	Peel .....	458	24816	Brampton.
Elgin .....	703	25418	St. Thomas.	Perth .....	698	15545	Stratford.
Essex .....	677	16817	Sandwich.	Peterboro' .....	1005	15237	Peterboro'.
Frontenac .....	1342	30735	Kingston.	Prescott .....	475	10487	L'Orignal.
Glenagarry .....	450	17595	Alexandria, v.	Prince Edward...	334	18887	Picton.
Grey .....	2321	13217	Owen Sound.	Renfrew .....	1133	9415	Burnstown, v.
Grenville .....	421	20707	Prescott.	Russell .....	379	2870	Cumbers'd, v.
Haldimand .....	459	18788	Cayuga.	Simcoe .....	1797	27165	Barrie.
Halton .....	362	18322	Milton.	Stormont .....	391	14463	Cornwall.
Hastings .....	1324	31977	Belleville.	Victoria .....	749	11657	Lindsay.
Huron .....	1392	19198	Goderich.	Waterloo .....	513	26537	Berlin.
Kent .....	870	17469	Chatham.	Wellington .....	1237	26796	Guelph.
Lambton .....	1093	10815	Sarnia.	Welland .....	356	20141	Merrittsville.
Lanark .....	1150	27317	Perth.	Wentworth .....	426	42619	Hamilton.
Leeds .....	805	30280	Brockville.	York .....	808	79719	Toronto.
Lennox .....	170	7953	Napanee, v.				
Lincoln .....	306	23868	Niagara.				
				42 Counties...	32,492	952,004	Ottawa, cap'l.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the Universities, Colleges, Schools, &c., and of the Educational Department? Give the boundaries of the counties, with the cities and chief towns, on the map.

### 74a. The Legislative Council Electoral Divisions of Upper Canada are twenty-four, as follows :

(1) **Western.**—The counties of Essex and Kent.

(2) **St. Clair.**—The county of Lambton and the West Riding of Middlesex.

(3) **Malahide.**—The East and West Ridings of Elgin, the East Riding of Middlesex, and the city of London.

(4) **Tecumseth.**—The counties of Huron and Perth.

(5) **Saugeen.**—The counties of Bruce and Grey, and the North Riding of Simcoe.

(6) **Brock.**—The North and South Ridings of Wellington and the North Riding of Waterloo.

(7) **Gore.**—The South Riding of Waterloo and the North Riding of Oxford.

(8) **Thames.**—The South Riding of Oxford and the county of Norfolk.

(9) **Erie.**—The East and West Ridings of Brant and the county of Haldimand.

(10) **Niagara.**—The counties of Lincoln and Welland, and the town of Niagara.

(11) **Burlington.**—The North and South Ridings of Wentworth, and the city of Hamilton.

(12) **Home.**—The counties of Halton and Peel.

(13) **Midland.**—The North Riding of York and the South Riding of Simcoe.

(14) **York.**—The city of Toronto and the township of York.

(15) **King's.**—The East and West Ridings of York (except the township of York) and the South Riding of Ontario.

(16) **Queen's.**—The North Riding of Ontario, the county of Victoria, and the West Riding of Durham.

(17) **Newcastle.**—The East Riding of Durham and the East and West Ridings of Northumberland.

(18) **Trent.**—The county of Peterborough, the North Riding of Hastings, and the county of Lennox.

(19) **Quinte.**—The South Riding of Hastings and the county of Prince Edward.

(20) **Cataraqui.**—The counties of Addington and Frontenac, and the city of Kingston.

(21) **Bathurst.**—The South Riding of Leeds and the North and South Ridings of Lanark.

(22) **Rideau.**—The counties of Renfrew and Carleton, and the city of Ottawa.

(23) **St. Lawrence.**—The town of Brockville and township of Elizabethtown, the South Riding of Grenville, the North Riding of Leeds and Grenville, and the county of Dundas.

(24) **Eastern.**—The counties of Stormont, Prescott, Russell, Glengarry, and the town and township of Cornwall.

### 75. Divisions of the Province.—Taking the cities as central points in each division, we group the counties around them as follows :

#### I. OTTAWA DIVISION.

**76. The City of Ottawa,** the new Seat of Government (formerly called Bytown), is situated on the right bank of the Ottawa river, in the Township of Nepean. A branch railway to Prescott (53 miles) and the Rideau Canal (126 miles in length) connect Ottawa with the Grand Trunk Railway. It is also connected with Hull, on the Lower Canada side of the River, by a handsome suspension bridge. It contains a court-house, two hospitals, nunnery, Roman Catholic college, grammar and common schools, various churches, bank agencies, stores, lumber merchants' establishments, mills, foundries, market, printing offices, &c. Its chief trade is derived from the transport of lumber to the Quebec and English markets. The value of the exports passing through the city is about \$4,000,000 per annum. Hull, opposite Ottawa, was first settled in 1800, by Philemon Wright, from Massachusetts. Ottawa was originally called Bytown after Colonel By, of the Royal Engineers, who was charged with the construction of the Rideau Canal. The site was originally granted to the officers of the incorporated militia, and of the disbanded regiment of De Watteville. The name was changed to Ottawa

*Exercises.*—Trace the Legislative Council Electoral Divisions on the map. What is said of the Divisions of the Province, and of the city of Ottawa?

in 1855. By the Queen it was selected as the seat of government in 1857. The Chaudière and Rideau Falls, near the city, are very picturesque. The city of Ottawa is distant from—

	<i>Miles.</i>		<i>Miles.</i>		<i>Miles.</i>		<i>Miles.</i>
Kingston .....	95	Sault Ste. Marie...	475	Montreal .....	100	St. John, N.B.....	480
Port Hope.....	172	The Lake Superior		Three Rivers .....	175	Halifax, N.S.....	612
Toronto.....	233	Mines .....	660	Quebec .....	240	Pictou Mines .....	685
London .....	334	Fort Garry .....	1140	Saguenay .....	322	St. John's, N.F.....	1150
Windsor .....	440	Red River.....	{	Frederickton .....	455		

**77. The Counties** in this division are Renfrew, Lanark, Leeds, Grenville, Carleton, Russell, Dundas, Stormont, Glengarry, and Prescott.

**78. Ottawa Country.**—*Timber.*—In the counties of Carleton, Lanark, and Renfrew, white pine is the chief timber. It grows in an area of 100 miles from north to south, and from 20 to 40 in width. Westward, an area of 130 miles from north to south, and from 20 to 50 wide, is covered with red pine. Between the rivers Bonnechère and Mad-a-was-ka, hard wood and better land are found. Further north, hard wood prevails, with a little white, but no red pine. This area, embracing 7,000 square miles, is 130 miles from south-east to north-west, and 75 wide. It contains the head waters of the Ottawa tributaries, Mad-a-was-ka, and Pet-ah-wah-weh; and the Lake Huron tributaries, Ma-gan-e-ta-wan and Muskoka. *Roads.*—Several leading roads have recently been opened through this tract, by the government. The chief are the Mat-a-wan, 90 miles long; O-pe-on-go, 100; Mus-ko-ka; Hastings; Fron-te-nac, 59; Addington, 56; Bob-cay-ge-on, 45; and Bell's Line. Lakes and rivers are numerous in the section, and water power abundant.

**79. Frontier Counties.**—*Glengarry.*—The Glengarry Highland Militia have long



GLENGARRY CAIRN.

been noted for loyal devotion to their country. In the war of 1812, they particularly distinguished themselves; and, in token of their patriotic loyalty, during the insurrectionary troubles of 1837-8, Lieut. Colonel Carmichael, aided by the inhabitants (men, women, and children), erected on one of the small islands opposite the shore, in Lake St Francis, an immense cairn of stones, 60 feet high, surmounted by a flag staff inserted in the muzzle of a cannon placed in an upright position. *Dundas.*—Chrystler's Farm, in the township of Williamsburgh, was one of the battle-fields of 1812-14, on which the Americans were defeated, November, 1813. *Grenville.*—Windmill Point, at Prescott, is noted for the obstinate defence of three days which was here made by the insurgents from the United States, in November, 1838. The windmill and adjacent buildings still remain blackened and battered ruins, as a monument of the misguided attempt of a few men to sever the happy bond of union which connects us with the land of our forefathers. Prescott is connected

*Exercises.*—Give the distance of Ottawa from the cities and places mentioned. Bound the counties. Describe the Ottawa country. What is said of the frontier Counties? Glengarry Militia? &c.

with the Ottawa by a line of railway. *Leeds*.—Lakes are numerous in this county. The Rideau Canal also passes through it. *Lanark* is an interior county, and was settled in 1815. It is proposed to connect Perth, the chief town, with the Grand Trunk Railway, at Brockville, by a branch line. The geological features of the adjoining townships are very marked. Iron and copper ores are abundant. In a few years these sources of wealth will doubtless be rendered available in promoting the prosperity of the Counties.



WINDMILL POINT, PRESCOTT.

## II. KINGSTON DIVISION.

**80. The City of Kingston** (formerly called Ca-ta-ra-qui and Fron-te-nac) stands at the north-eastern extremity of Lake Ontario. A fort was built here by Count de Frontenac, a French Governor, in 1673. In 1756, the fort was captured by Colonel Bradstreet. Its actual settlement dates from 1783. It possesses a safe harbor, and has for many years past been a chief naval and military station. The fortifications on Point Henry and on Snake Island, &c., are formidable and extensive. The city is well laid out, and substantial looking. The market house is a handsome stone structure. Churches are

numerous. There are two colleges (Queen's and Regiopolis.) The Provincial Penitentiary is also situated here. Commercially, Kingston has many advantages. Situated on Cataraqui Bay, at the foot of lake navigation, with the Rideau Canal to the east, and the beautiful Bay of Quinté to the west, and one of the chief stations of the Grand Trunk Railway, it has easy access to all the adjacent counties. It has also the advantage of a marine railway. In 1838, the city was incorporated; and in 1841, Lord Sydenham, who is buried here, made it the first capital of United



THE CITY OF KINGSTON, FROM FORT HENRY.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the Wind Mill at Prescott, and of Leeds and Lanark Counties? Of the City of Kingston; its history, fortifications, and situation?



Canada. The entrance to the harbor is guarded by two Martello towers. (*See the following engraving.*) The population of Kingston is about fifteen thousand.

**81. The Counties** in this division are Frontenac, Addington, Leunox, Hastings, Prince Edward, Northumberland, Durham, Peterboro', and Victoria.

**82. Frontier Counties.**—The Grand Trunk Railway passes through the towns of Belleville, Cobourg, and Port Hope, in these counties. The river Trent flows into the beautiful Bay of Quinté, and conveys from the interior quantities of lumber for the American and English markets. Victoria College—one of the important educational institutions of the Province—is situated at Cobourg. There is also a Collegiate Seminary at Belleville. A railway runs from

Cobourg to Peterboro' and from Port Hope to Lindsay.

**83. The Interior Counties** are noted for their numerous lakes and minerals. Iron is found at Marmora, and marble at Madoc and adjoining townships. Peterboro', on the O-ton-a-bee river, is the chief town in these Counties.



MARTELLO TOWER.

### III. TORONTO DIVISION.

**84. The City of Toronto** (formerly called York) is situated on a circular bay of the same name, and was founded by Governor Simcoe, in 1794. It is 165 miles from Kingston, 45 from Hamilton, and 50 from the Falls of Niagara. The city is laid out at right angles. Its chief public buildings are the Cathedrals and Churches, the Parliament and Government Houses, University of Toronto, University College, Trinity College, Normal School, St. Michael's College, Osgoode Hall, St. Lawrence Hall, Mechanics' Institute, Lunatic Asylum, Post Office, Exchange, and City Schools. It is the permanent seat of the Superior Law Courts and Department for Public Instruction for Upper Canada. It is connected by railway with Montreal, Hamilton, Lake Huron, Stratford, &c. King and Yonge Streets are the principal streets: the College Avenue and the Normal School Building and Grounds are the chief places of resort. A detachment of soldiers is stationed here. The value of exports at the Port is about \$1,500,000. It is the capital of Upper Canada, and has, since 1849, been the alternate Seat of Government with Quebec. It is an agreeable place of residence. The population is about 50,000.

**85. The Counties** in this division are Ontario, York, Peel, Simcoe, Grey, Wellington, and Bruce.

**86. Frontier Counties.**—The Grand Trunk Railway, from Montreal to Stratford, passes through Whitby, Toronto, and Guelph, in these counties. Lake Simcoe skirts the northern boundaries of York and Ontario counties, and is reached by railway. A canal to the lake is also proposed.

**87. The Interior Counties,** Simcoe, Grey, and Bruce, are bounded on the north by Lake Huron and Georgian Bay. It is proposed to construct a railway from Guelph to Saugeen, so as to connect Toronto with Lake Huron direct. It would pass through a rich agricultural country, now in process of rapid settlement. A railway is also projected from Toronto, *via* Weston, to Owen Sound.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the Frontier and Interior Counties? Bound them. Point out on the map and describe Toronto. What is it noted for? Give the adjoining counties, and bound them.



## IV. HAMILTON DIVISION.

**88. The City of Hamilton**, is situated on Burlington Bay, at the western end of Lake Ontario. It was settled in 1813, when the camp on the Burlington Heights was an important centre for military operations against the American invaders of Upper Canada. It is situated a mile from the bay, at the foot of the hilly range which extends from the Niagara Falls, and which is here called the "Mountain." It is the chief station of the Great Western Railway, which extends from the Niagara Suspension Bridge to Windsor, opposite Detroit, and is an important commercial city,—its trade, imports and exports rivalling those of Toronto. It is the projected seat of a college. Its admirable public schools are most efficient. Dundurn, the seat of Sir Allan MacNab, and the numerous villa residences near the mountain, evince great taste, as well as social wealth and prosperity. The population is now (1858) about 28,000.

**89. The Counties** in this division are Halton, Wentworth, Waterloo, Brant, Norfolk, Haldimand, Lincoln, and Welland.

**90. The Frontier Counties** are noted for their historical interest. They contain many of the battle-fields of the war of 1812. The Falls of Niagara are also situated at the eastern boundary of this group of counties. The Welland Canal crosses the counties of Lincoln and Welland, and con-

nects Lakes Erie and Ontario, thus surmounting the difficulties of navigation caused by the celebrated Falls.

**91. The Interior Counties** are famous for their agricultural capabilities. The Ouse, or Grand River flows through them, and is navigable as far as Brantford. Gypsum is found in abundance at Paris. Dundas, Galt, Paris, and St. Catharines, are flourishing towns in this division.

## V. LONDON DIVISION.

**92. The City of London** is the only city of Upper Canada which is not situated on a navigable stream or lake. It stands, as does its great prototype, upon the river Thames (or la Tranche), and is 80 miles west of Hamilton, and 120 east of Detroit, United States,—with both of which it is connected by railway. It is surrounded on all sides by a rich agricultural country, upon which it depends for its prosperity. It formerly contained a garrison, and was the military head-quarters, as it is now the great commercial depot, of the west. The public buildings and churches are handsome. It contains a number of very good schools. The population is about 10,000.

**93. The Counties** in this division are Middlesex, Elgin, Oxford, Perth, Huron, Lambton, Kent, and Essex.

**94. The Northern Counties** extend along the south-eastern shore of Lake Huron, and along half the northern shore of Lake Erie. They embrace almost every variety of soil, are affected by different degrees of temperature, and present the various stages of social and agricultural development. The hop and tobacco plant, Indian corn, &c., grow freely at the south; wheat

and other grains are the chief staples along the northern tier. The principal rivers are the Thames, Sydenham, and Maitland.

**95. The Interior Counties** are well settled, and embrace some of the best farming lands in Canada. Goderich, Stratford, Woodstock, and Chatham are the principal towns in this division. The Great Western Railway has its terminus at Windsor, opposite Detroit, in the United States, and connects there with the western lines, Other railways intersect in these counties.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the City of Hamilton? For what are the Frontier Counties noted, and the Interior famous? Describe the city of London and the adjoining counties.

## VI. LAKE SUPERIOR DIVISION.

**96. The Lake Superior**, or Mining, section of the Province is yet unsurveyed. It extends from the mouth of the French river, westward, to the source of the Pigeon river. Its length is 410 miles; breadth, 160; area, 48,000 square miles; coast line, 600 miles—180 on Lake Huron and the River St. Mary, and 420 on Lake Superior. The coast is bold and rocky, and the harbours are numerous and safe. The timber, commercially speaking, is not very valuable, being chiefly spruce, balsam, fir, white birch, and poplar. Hardwood, and red and white pine, are scarce. The country on the north shore of Lake Huron is more wooded, and fertile. At the mouth of Spanish river there is a good harbour. Copper ore and white fish are the great commercial staples of this division. The Indian population is about 2,500. The Indian reserves consist of about 590,000 acres. Che-goim-e-gon, or La Pointe, was the ancient capital of the Odjibway or Chippewa Indians. Tradition states that here King Mud-je-ke-wis and other Indian demi-gods and great men lived.

## V. LOWER CANADA.

**1. Boundaries.**—Lower Canada is bounded on the north by Labrador and the Hudson's Bay Territory; on the east by Labrador and the Gulf of St. Lawrence; on the south by the Bay of Chaleurs, New Brunswick and the States of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, and New York; and on the west by the river Ottawa and Upper Canada.

**2. Size.**—Lower Canada is about 600 miles from east to west, and 300 from north to south. Its area is about 210,000 square miles, and it contains nearly 134,500,000 acres.

## I. PHYSICAL FEATURES.

**3. Surface of the Country.**—Though not a mountainous country, the scenery of Lower Canada is more picturesque than that of Upper Canada. Its rivers and mountain ranges are also on a grander scale. Its climate, though severe in some parts, is agreeable and healthy. Fogs prevail in the autumn, on its navigable waters.

**4. Geology.**—The lower St. Lawrence is inclosed by two mountain ranges: the Appalachian, on the south, running along the peninsula of Gaspé, there known as the Notre Dame Mountains, and extending to Alabama; and the Laurentides, on the north, running from the Gulf to Cape Tourment, near Quebec, and hence gradually turning to the north-west, and extending into the interior of the continent, north-west of Lake Superior. The rocks of the latter range, termed by Sir William Logan the Laurentian system, are described as ancient sedimentary unfossiliferous strata, altered to a highly crystalline condition, and greatly corrugated and disturbed. They constitute the oldest series known on the continent of America, and are supposed to be equivalent to the iron-bearing rocks of Scandinavia. They consist of micaceous and hornblende gneiss, interstratified with important beds of limestone and lime-feldspar rock. They abound in iron ore; and among the economic minerals belonging to them are found ores of lead and copper, with rensselerite, phosphate of lime, barytes, plumbago, mica, labradorite, marble, and traces of corundum. The southern range consists of Silurian and Devonian rocks. In an altered condition, and they afford a mineral region yielding serpentine and variegated marbles, potstone, soapstone, granite, and roofing slates, with the ores of chromium, iron, copper, and gold. In most parts of this region the fossils are obliterated: in some they appear distorted by molecular movements, resulting from crystallizing forces. The effects of

*Exercises.*—Describe the Lake Superior divisions? Give the boundaries and size of Lower Canada. What is said of its physical features and geology?

metamorphism diminish, proceeding from south-east to north-west; and in the area between the mountain ranges mentioned, it disappears, the fossils become distinct, the rocks assume an attitude approaching horizontal, and the surface of the country is even. The superficial deposits covering the solid strata are composed of clay, sand and gravel, derived from very recent tertiary drift, and contain marine remains, consisting of shells, fish, seals, and whales,—many of the species being identical with those now living. The economic minerals of the flat country are limestones, building-stones, sandstone for glass-making, clay for common bricks and common pottery, fullers' earth, moulding-sand, bog iron ore, fresh-water shell marl, and peat.

**5. Mineral Springs.**—Mr. Hunt gives the following list of saline springs in Lower Canada, numbered in the order of their strength: Baie St. Paul, la Baie du Febvre, 1; St. Leon, Caxton, River Ouelle, Lanoraie, Varennes, 1; Varennes, 2; Point du Jour, Bekeil, la Baie, 1; Chambly, 1; la Baie du Febvre, 2; Ste. Anne de la Pocatière, 1; Pike River, 1; St. Benoit, Pike River, 2; Chambly, 2; Ste. Martine, Nicolet, les Eboulements, Ste. Ours, Ste. Anne de la Pocatière, 2; Jacques Cartier River, Nicolet, 2; Matane, 1.

**6. The Principal Lakes** are St. John. Pa-pi-mo na-gane, St. Peter, St. Francis, St. Louis, and Grand Lake.

**7. The Minor Lakes** are Os-ke-la-nai-o, les Quizes, Ke-pee-wa, Two Mountains, Ou-a-reau, Way-ag-a-mac, and Commissioners (north of the St. Lawrence); and Me-taped-i-ac, Temi-is-cou-a-ta, St. Francis (Co. Beauce), Me-gan-tic, and Mem-phram-a-gog, (south of the St. Lawrence).

**8. The Chief Rivers** are the St. Lawrence, Saguenay, St. Maurice, Ottawa (in part), Richelieu, St. Francis, and Chaudière.

**9. The St. Lawrence**, as it leaves Upper Canada, expands into Lakes St. Francis and St. Louis. Passing the mouth of the Richelieu, it again expands into Lake St. Peter. Thence it gradually widens and deepens until its waters mingle with those of the Gulf, and then pass into the Atlantic Ocean. In size and greatness it has only one equal in North America—the Mississippi. Its tributaries are the other chief rivers of Lower Canada. It discharges into the ocean nearly five millions of tons of fresh water annually.—(See page 17.)

**10. The Saguenay**, or outlet of Lake St. John, is 100 miles in length, and falls into the St. Lawrence, at Tad-ous-sac. It has thirty tributaries, and drains a triangular area of 27,000 square miles. In many places its banks are high, perpendicular rocks. It is navigable for 75 miles: above which the rapids are numerous. Its scenery is grand, particularly at Ha! Ha! Bay.

**11. The St. Maurice**, or Three Rivers (from its three-fold debouch into the St. Lawrence), rises in Lake Oskelanaio. Including its windings, it is nearly 400 miles in length. Its principal tributaries are the Pisnay, Ribbon, Mat-a-win, Vermillion, Windago, and Croche. It drains an area of 21,000 square miles. In its course it expands into numerous lakes, and is navigable for 120 miles. Its banks are from 200 to 1,000 feet in height, and are covered with groups of majestic trees. Besides the great Falls of the Sha-wan-e-gan (160 feet in height), it has a great number of minor falls and cascades, and many beautiful islands. Its timber seems inexhaustible, thus rendering its commercial value very great.



ST. JOHN'S MILITARY POST, RICHELIEU.—(See page 59.)

**Exercises.**—What minerals are found? What do you know of their value? What of the mineral springs, the lakes, and rivers? Describe the St. Lawrence, Saguenay, and St. Maurice rivers.



ISLE-AUX-NOIX, RICHELIEU RIVER.

**12. The Riche-lieu** (formerly called Chambly, St. John, and Sorel) issues from Lake Champlain, and flows northward to the St. Lawrence. Its length is 75 miles. Up this river Champlain penetrated, in 1609, when he discovered the beautiful lake that bears his name. The forts at Isle-aux-Noix, St. John, and Chambly, have given historical interest to the river. (*See preceding page and p. 59.*)

**13. The St. Francis**, rises in the eastern townships, and falls into the St. Lawrence at Lake St. Peter. The waters of the beautiful Lakes Ma-sa-wi-pi and Memphramagog flow into it by two tributary streams.

**14. The Chau-di-ere**, a picturesque river, rises in the angle of the Ap-pa-la-chian mountains (which divide Canada from the State of Maine, near its north-west corner), and passing through Lake Megantie, falls into the St. Lawrence, near Quebec. The Falls, two-and-a-half miles from its mouth, are about 100 feet in height.

**15. Montmorency**.—Among the lesser

rivers, Montmorency is the most interesting. It rises in Snow Lake, and flows southwards towards the St. Lawrence, till it rushes, in a narrow torrent, over the celebrated Falls of Montmorency, six miles from Quebec. (*See illustration on next page.*)

**16. Minor Rivers**.—The principal minor rivers, on the north side of the St. Lawrence, are the Belsamite, Per-i-co-ba, Jacques Cartier, Ste. Anne, L'Assomption, and Le Nord; on the south side, Yamaska, Nicolet, Etchemin, Du Loup, Matane, York, Metapediac, and Restigouche, in part; Chateauguay river is famous for its historical interest. (*See "Battle Grounds," page 61.*)

**17. The Principal Bays** are Chaleurs (in part), Malbaie, Gaspé, Ka-mou-ras-ka, Murray, St. Paul, Mille Vaches, La Vallière, Outarde, and Seven Islands.

**18. The Chief Islands** are the Magdalen (off the Gaspé coast,) Anticosti, Orleans, Montreal, Jésus, and Perrot. The lesser ones are Aux-Noix, Bic, Green, Hare, Aux-Coudres, St. Antoine, St. Ignace, Bizard, Grosse, Grand, and St. Helen's.

## II. CLIMATE, NATURAL PRODUCTS, POPULATION, ETC.

**19. The Climate of Lower Canada**, although similar to that of Upper Canada, is more severe and steadily fine in winter, and warmer in summer.

*Exercises*.—Trace and describe the Richelieu, St. Francis, Chaudière, and Montmorency. Give the other rivers, bays, and islands. What mountains divide Lower Canada from the State of Maine?



Spring bursts forth in great beauty, and vegetation is rapid. Winter is always a gay and agreeable season, owing to the fine social qualities of the people.

**20. Mineral Products.**—For the geology and mineral products of Lower Canada, see page 28.

**21. The Vegetable Products** are similar to those of Upper Canada. The best apples on the continent are grown at Montreal.

**22. Timber.**—With few exceptions, the same timber is found in Lower as in Upper Canada. The trees attain even greater perfection in Lower Canada.

**23. The Fruits and Flowers** are similar to those of Upper Canada. The peach does not grow unprotected.

**24. The Animals** are similar to those found in Upper Canada; but the moose-deer [from the Indian word *musée*, or wood-eater] is more common in Lower than in Upper Canada.

**25. The Birds** are similar to those of Upper Canada. The partridge, however, abounds in Lower Canada.

**26. Fish.**—In addition to the fresh-water fish of Upper Canada, cod, mackerel, herring, pilchard, sea-trout, eel, salmon, &c., abound in great numbers. Efforts are now being made to protect these fisheries.

**27. The Reptiles and Insects** are similar to those of Upper Canada.

**28. Population.**—The first settlers in Lower Canada were chiefly from Brittany. Researches prove that a great many of the first inhabitants were from the central part of France; but in the Eastern Townships the inhabitants are chiefly of British origin, including the United Empire Loyalists and Americans. The census of 1851-2 gives the population by origin of races, as follows, viz.:



FALLS OF MONTMORENCY.  
(250 feet in height).

Franco-Canadian...	669,528	From England and Wales	11,230	Indians, 4,058; others, 1,129=5,387
Anglo-Canadian ...	125,586	" Scotland .....	14,565	
From Ireland.....	51,499	" the United States...	12,482	Total population... 890,261

*Exercises.*—What is said of the climate? Give the natural products. What is said of the animals birds, fish, reptiles, and insects of Lower Canada? Who originally settled Lower Canada?



**29. Religion.**—All religious denominations in Lower Canada are protected by law. In point of wealth and number, the Church of Rome takes precedence. The census of 1851-2 thus classified the religious persuasions :

Church of Rome (4 dioceses)	746,866	Methodists .....	21,183	Second Adventists...	1,369
Church of England (2 dioceses)	45,402	Baptists .....	4,493	Others not reported.	30,036
<i>Presbyterians :</i>		Congregationalists.....	3,927		
Church of Scotland....	4,047	Universalists .....	3,450	Grand total....	
Other persuasions.....	29,488			890,261	

**30. Education** in Lower, as in Upper Canada, is liberally supported by the Legislature. The colleges and academies are numerous, and of a superior class. There are also many good seminaries and private schools.

**31. Universities.**—McGill College, Montreal; Laval, Quebec; and Bishop's College, Lennoxville. There are also six Special Theological Schools.

**32. Colleges.**—There are 24 Colleges. viz: at Montreal and Quebec; and in the counties of L'Assomption, Nicolet, Kamouraska, Richmond, St. Hyacinthe, Terrebonne, Chambly, Joliette, Argenteuil, Laval, Levy, Vaudreuil, Rimouski, Beauce, Rouville, Sherbrooke, Bellechasse, and Verchères.

**33. Academies** are established in all the principal towns of Lower Canada. There are 43 for boys and mixed, and 71 for girls—aided by the Legislature. There are also 160 model schools, and two deaf and dumb institutions.

**36. Cities and Towns.**—There are four cities in Lower Canada: Quebec, Montreal, Three Rivers, and St. Hyacinthe. The chief towns are Sherbrooke, St. John's, and William Henry.

**37. Counties and Judicial Districts.**—Lower Canada is divided into 60 counties, and those counties into 19 judicial districts, as follows :

Districts.	Including the Counties of	Popul'n in 1851-52.	Chief Towns.	Districts.	Including the Counties of	Popul'n in 1851-52.	Chief Towns.
(1) Ottawa, a.	Ottawa -	10,038	Aylmer.	Montreal (cont'd.)	Chambly -	12,635	Chambly.
	Pontiac -	9,865	Allumettes.		Verchères -	14,399	Varennes.
(2) Montreal, b.	Hochelaga -	19,666	Montreal.	[3] Terrebonne, c.	Argenteuil -	14,189	St. Placide.
	Jacques Cartier -				Two Mountains -	15,726	St. Scholastique
	City of Montreal -	57,715			Terrebonne -	16,355	St. Thérèse.
	Laval -	11,059	St. Martin.	[4] Joliette, d.	L'Assomption -	16,866	L'Assomption.
	Vaudreuil -	9,917	Vaudreuil.		Montcalm -	12,824	St. Patrick.
	Soulanges -	11,512	Coteau du Lac		Joliette -	18,218	Joliette.
	Laprairie -	14,054	Laprairie.	[5] Richelieu, e.	Richelieu -	19,350	Sorel.
CHIEF TOWNS: a, Aylmer; b, Montreal; c, St. Scholastique; d, Industrie; e, Sorel							

*Exercises.*—What are the Educational advantages of Lower Canada? What of her Universities. Academies, Schools, and Educational Department? Give the cities and chief towns.

Districts.	Including the Counties of	Popul'n in 1851-52.	Chief Towns.	Districts.	Including the Counties of	Popul'n in 1851-52.	Chief Towns.
Richelieu ( <i>con'd</i> )	Yamaska .....	14,748	La Baie.	Montm'ny ( <i>con'd</i> )	Bellechasse ....	12,094	St. Michel.
	Berthier .....	16,390	Berthier.	(13) Beauce, ...	Beauce .....	15,507	Ste. Marie.
(6) Three Rivers, <i>a</i>	Maskinongé ...	13,450	Maskinongé.		Dorchester .....	12,790	St. Anselme.
	St. Maurice .....	9,211	Three Rivers.	(14) Arthabaska, <i>f</i>	Mégantic .....	15,857	Somerset.
	City of Three R'vs	4,936			Arthabaska .....	6,539	Arthabaska.
	Champlain .....	13,896	Batiscan.		Drummond .....	9,025	Drummond.
	Nicolet .....	18,957	Nicolet.	(15) St. Francis, <i>k</i>	Richmond .....	8,489	Redmond.
(7) Quebec, <i>b</i> ....	Portneuf .....	19,951	Cap Santé.		T'n of Sherbrooke	2,968	
	Quebec .....	18,889	Quebec.		Wolfe .....	2,235	Wolfeville.
	Montmorency .....	42,052			Compton .....	7,463	Compton.
	Levy .....	9,598	Chateau Richer.		Stead .....	10,255	Stead.
	Lotbinière .....	14,855	St. Joseph	(16) Bedford, <i>l</i> ..	Shefford .....	11,083	Granby.
(8) Saguenay, <i>c</i> ..	Charlevoix .....	15,061	Lotbinière		Missisquoi .....	15,203	Philipsburg.
	Saguenay .....	13,411	Baie St. Paul.		Brome .....	10,010	Brome.
	Chicoutimi .....	1,865	Tadoussac.	(17) St. Hyacinthe	St. Hyacinthe ..	17,344	St. Hyacinthe.
	Gaspé .....	7,079	Chicoutimi.		Upton .....	16,692	Upton.
(9) Gaspé, <i>d</i> .....	Gaspé .....	10,094	Percé.		Rouville .....	16,338	St. Hilaire.
	Bonaventure .....	10,853	New Carlisle, <i>e</i> .	(18) Iberville, <i>n</i> ..	St. Johns .....	15,226	St. Jean.
(10) Rimouski, <i>f</i> ..	Rimouski .....	13,851	Rimouski.		Napierville .....	13,541	Babyville.
(11) Kamouraska, ..	Kamouraska .....	19,375	Kamouraska.	(19) Beaufortville	Beaufortville ..	14,861	St. George.
	Temiscouata .....	14,552	Rivière du Loup	(19) Beauharnois	Huntingdon .....	15,190	Huntingdon.
(12) Montmagny, <i>h</i>	L'Islet .....	10,591	L'Islet.		Beauharnois .....	12,162	Beauharnois.
	Montmagny .....	11,945	Montmagny.		Chateauguay .....	17,354	Chateauguay.

CHIEFS LIEUX: *a*, Three Rivers; *b*, Quebec; *c*, St. Etienne de la Malbaie; *d*, Percé; *e*, New Carlisle; *f*, St. Germain de Rimouski; *g*, St. Louis de Kamouraska; *h*, Montmagny; *i*, St. Joseph de la Beauce; *j*, St. Christophe d'Arthabaska; *k*, Sherbrooke; *l*, Nelsonville; *m*, St. Hyacinthe; *n*, St. Jean; *o*, Beauharnois.

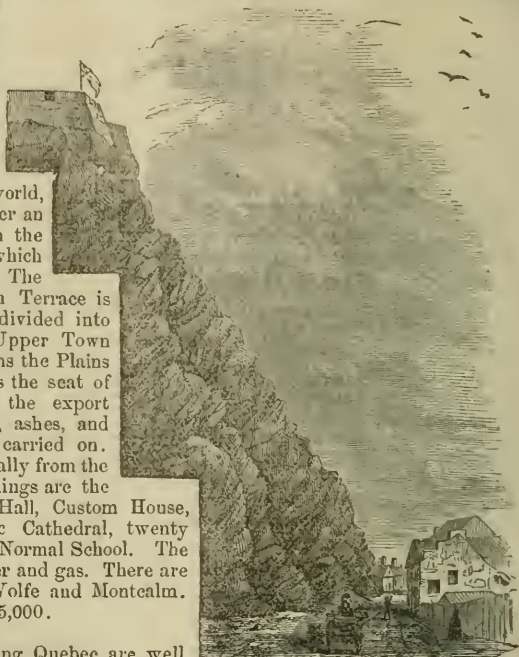
### 37a. The Legislative Council Electoral Divisions are twenty-four, as follows:

- (1) Gulf.—The Counties of Gaspé, Bonaventure, and Rimouski.
- (2) Grandville.—The Counties of Temiscouata and Kamouraska, the Parishes of St. Roch des Aulnats and St. Jean Port Joli, and the prolongation thereof in a straight line to the Province Line in the County of L'Islet.
- (3) De la Durantaye.—The remainder of the County of L'Islet, the Counties of Montmagny and Bellechasse, and the Parishes of St. Joseph, St. Henri, and Notre Dame de la Victoire, in the County of Levy.
- (4) Lauzon.—The remainder of the County of Levy, and the Counties of Dorchester and Beauce.
- (5) Kennebec.—The Counties of Lotbinière, Mégantic, and Arthabaska.
- (6) De la Vallière.—The Counties of Nicolet and Yamaska, the Townships of Wendover, Grantham, and that part of Upton which lies in the County of Drummond.
- (7) Wellington.—The remainder of the County of Drummond, the County of Richmond, the Town of Sherbrooke, and the Counties of Wolfe, Compton, and Stanstead.
- (8) Sorel.—The Counties of Richelieu and Bagot, the Parishes of St. Denis, La Presentation, St. Barnabe, and St. Jude, in the County of St. Hyacinthe.
- (9) Bedford.—The Counties of Missisquoi, Brome, and Shefford.
- (10) Rougemont.—The remainder of the County of St. Hyacinthe, the Counties of Rouville and Iberville.
- (11) Montarville.—The Counties of Verchères, Chambly, and Laprairie.
- (12) De Lorimier.—The Counties of St. Johns and Napierville; St. Jean Chrysostome, and Russelltown, in the County of Chateauguay; and Hemmingford, in the County of Huntingdon.
- (13) The Laurentides.—The Counties of Chicoutimi, Charlevoix, Saguenay, and Montmorency, the Seigneurie of Beauport, the Parish of Charlesbourg, the Townships of Stoneham and Tewkesbury, in the County of Quebec.
- (14) La Salle.—The remainder of the County of Quebec, the County of Port Neuf, and all that part of the Baillié of Quebec lying within the Parish of Notre Dame.
- (15) Stadacona.—The remainder of the County and Baillié of Quebec.
- (16) Shawanegan.—The Counties of Champlain and St. Maurice, the City of Three Rivers, the Parishes of Rivière du Loup, St. Leon, St. Paulin, and the Township of Hunterstown and its augmentation, County of Maskinongé.
- (17) De Lanaudière.—The remainder of the County of Maskinongé, the Counties of Berthier and Joliette (except the Parish of St. Paul), the Township of Kildare and its augmentation, and the Township of Cathcart.
- (18) Repentigny.—The Parish of St. Paul, the Township of Kildare and its augmentation, the Township of Cathcart, in the County of Joliette, and the Counties of L'Assomption and Montcalm.
- (19) Mille Isles.—The Counties of Terrebonne and Two Mountains.
- (20) Inkermann.—The Counties of Argenteuil, Ottawa and Pontiac.
- (21) Alma.—The Parishes of Long Point, Pointe-aux-Trembles, Rivier des Prairies, Sault-aux-Recollets, in the County of Hochelaga, and that part of the Parish of Montreal which lies to the east of the prolongation of St. Denis Street, the County of Laval, and that part of the City of Montreal which lies to the east of Bonsecours and St. Denis Streets, and their prolongations.
- (22) Victoria.—The remainder of the City of Montreal, exclusive of the Parish.
- (23) Rigaud.—The remainder of the Parish of Montreal, and the Counties of Jacques Cartier, Vaudreuil, and Soulanges.
- (24) De Salaberry.—The remainder of the County of Chateauguay, and the remainder of the County of Huntingdon and the County of Beauharnois.

NOTE.—The teacher can require the pupil to bound any or all of the counties and districts here given on the map, and point out their chief towns and chiefs lieux.

**38. District Divisions.**—The three former district divisions of Lower Canada were Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers. Afterwards, four other districts, were added, viz.: Gaspé, Kamouraska, St. Francis, and Ottawa.

**39. The City of Quebec** is the oldest city in Canada. It was founded in 1608, by Champlain, near the site of the Indian village of Stad-a-co-na. In 1629, it was taken by Sir David Kertk, but was restored to the French in 1632. It was finally captured by Wolfe, in 1759, after an heroic defence by Montcalm. The Americans attacked it in 1775, but were repulsed, and their General, Montgomery, slain. The citadel and fortifications are the most famous in the world, next to Gibraltar. They cover an area of 40 acres, and crown the summit of Cape Diamond, which is 350 feet above the river. The panoramic view from Durham Terrace is very beautiful. The city is divided into Upper and Lower Town. Upper Town includes the citadel, and adjoins the Plains of Abraham. Lower Town is the seat of commerce. From this place the export trade in timber, ships, grain, ashes, and furs, valued at \$6,000,000, is carried on. About 1,500 vessels clear annually from the port. Among the public buildings are the Laval University, the Music Hall, Custom House, Post Office, Roman Catholic Cathedral, twenty Churches, two Colleges, and a Normal School. The city is well supplied with water and gas. There are also monuments to Generals Wolfe and Montcalm. The population is now about 45,000.



THE CITADEL, CAPE DIAMOND.

**40. The Counties** adjoining Quebec are well watered. They are the oldest and best settled counties in Lower Canada. The Island of Anticosti is 135 miles long and thirty-six wide. It is an important fishing station. It has several light-houses, and depôts to aid shipwrecked mariners. Tadoussac, at the mouth of the Saguenay river, is a principal station of the Hudson's Bay Company. The Island of Orleans, near Quebec, is 20 miles long, by 6 wide. It is fertile and well wooded. The ancient Huron Indian village of Lorette, the celebrated Falls of Montmorency, and the Beaufort Lunatic Asylum, are near Quebec.

*Exercises*—For what is Quebec so famous? Describe the city. Give the adjoining counties. What is said of Anticosti, the Saguenay, the island of Orleans, and other places?

The Laurentide Mountains, commencing below Quebec, extend along the northern banks of the St. Lawrence to the Gulf. The river Saguenay pierces them, and falls into the St. Lawrence about 180 miles below Quebec. The scenery of this river is very grand

**41. The City of Montreal** was founded in 1642, under the name of Ville-Marie, near the site of the Indian village of Hoch-e-la-ga. It is at the head of the ship navigation, and is 170 miles from Quebec. It stands on the island of the same name, at the confluence of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence rivers. It is the chief commercial city in Canada; and its magnificent stone quays, a mile in length, are unequalled in America. It is connected by the Grand Trunk Railway with Upper Canada, Quebec, and Portland (United States.) Its manufactures embrace cotton, wool, ropes, cordage, type, cast-iron, India-rubber, sugar-refining, &c. The annual value of its import trade is \$4,000,000. The water-works cost \$1,200,000. There are twenty-three Churches, two Colleges, and two Normal Schools. The French Parish Church of Notre Dame is the largest in America: it will hold 10,000 people. The other chief public buildings are the Court House, Bonsecours Market, the Banks, various Churches, &c. The Victoria Bridge of the Grand Trunk Railway, when complete, will be most remarkable structure of the kind in the world. It is nearly two miles long. (See the illustration on the next page.) The population is about 70,000.



NOTRE DAME PARISH CHURCH.

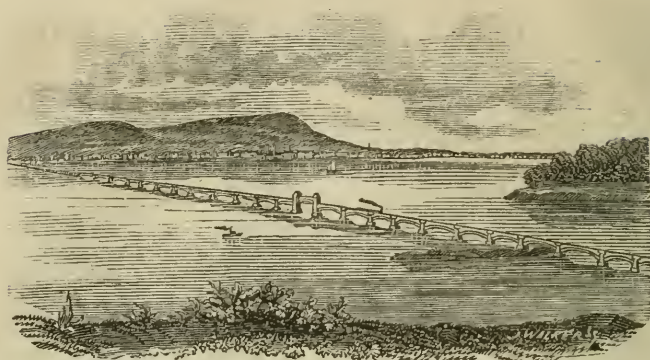
**42. The City of Three Rivers**, situated at the three-fold mouth of the river St. Maurice, is the capital of a most important section of Lower Canada. This section includes the counties bordering on the rivers St. Maurice to the east and Ottawa to the west, and embraces the entire commerce of these noble rivers. The iron-works at Three Rivers have long been famous. Brick-making is also extensively carried on. The city is 90 miles from both Quebec and Montreal, with which it is connected by steamers. The population is about 7,000.

**43. The St. Maurice** region has recently been explored, and is partially settled. The timber trade on the river is extensive. Railways to the Grand Piles on the St. Maurice, and to Arthabaska, are also projected. The country is well watered, and the intervalle lands rich and fertile. White pine timber and iron ore are abundant. Roads have been opened, and timber slides and booms constructed on the river, for facilitating internal and external trade.

**44. The City of St. Hyacinthe** is situated on the Yamaska river, and is con-

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of Montreal. Describe the adjoining counties. What is said of the city of Three Rivers, its commercial advantages, and of the St. Maurice country?





VICTORIA TUBULAR BRIDGE—GRAND TRUNK RAILWAY, MONTREAL.

nected with Montreal (30 miles distant), Quebec (137), and Portland (262), by the Grand Trunk Railway. Its mills and factories are extensive, and it has a flourishing local trade. The College, City Hall, Market, &c., are handsome buildings. The city is progressing rapidly. The population is now about 5,000.

**45. District of St. Francis.**—Sherbrooke is the central point of this district and of the Eastern Townships. This town is situated on the river St. Francis, and is divided into two parts by the small river Magog. There is abundance of water power, which, when applied, will make it the seat of extensive manufacturies and trade. Sher-



BELŒIL MOUNTAIN, ON THE RICHELIEU.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the city of St. Hyacinthe and the town of Sherbrooke? What are their commercial and manufacturing advantages? Describe the illustrations.



brooke is connected with Montreal (96 miles distant), Quebec (121), and Portland (196), by the Grand Trunk Railway. The population is about 3,000.

**46. The Physical Features** of this part of Lower Canada, including its whole southern portion, are very marked. It abounds in rivers, lakes, valleys, and tablelands, diversified by lofty elevations and isolated mountain peaks. Belœil, on the Richelieu river, is one of the latter. Further to the east, the Green Mountains of Vermont extend into Canada, and form the natural divisions between the rivers.

**47. The Eastern Townships** proper, which comprise the area lying to the south and between the Richelieu and Chaudière rivers, contain nearly 5,000,000 acres of land. They promise to become a rich and populous part of Lower Canada. The climate is milder than on the St. Lawrence, and the soil is generally fertile.

**48. Historically**, this section is interesting. The forts of William Henry, Chambly, St. John, and Isle-aux-Noix, have each a stirring tradition or legend. The name of Chateauguay is also memorable; while those of many places on the beautiful Champlain, which are mingled with the lights and shades of our own history, make that spot still almost classic British ground, though it is now outside of our Provincial boundary. (*See "Battle Grounds," p. 59-61.*)

**49. Kamou-ras-ka District.**—Kamou-raska is the chief place in this district. It

is situated on the south side of the St. Lawrence, 90 miles below Quebec. The population is 2,600. The adjoining counties border on New Brunswick and the State of Maine. Cacouna, or Kakouna (Temiscouata County), and Rivière du Loup, are favourite bathing places.

**50. The Gaspe District** includes most of the peninsula of that name, and is bounded by the Gulf and River St. Lawrence on the north and east, and by the Baie des Chaleurs and the River Restigouche to the south. The peninsula proper is 175 miles in length, between Cape Gaspé to the east and the head of Lake Metapédia to the west. It is 90 miles wide. In form and area, which is 11,800 square miles, it resembles Denmark. Its coast line is 400 miles; and the value of the fish caught annually there amounts to \$60,000. The population is about 25,000.

**51. The Surface** to the east is undulating and mountainous. The soil on the tablelands and valleys is good, and the forests are well wooded. The chief mountains are the Notre Dame range, which, in some places, reach a height of from 2,000 to 4,000 feet. Mount Logan is 3,780 feet. The chief rivers are the Matane, Ste. Anne, and St. John. The Magdalen Islands, 130 miles off the coast, are important fishing-stations. Gaspé is memorable in the history of Canada, as being the spot on which Jacques Cartier first landed, when he planted the *fleur-de-lys* in the New World.

## VI. THE PROVINCE OF CANADA.

**1. United Canada.**—Although physically, and to some extent nationally, distinct, the two Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada are politically and commercially united. As an integral part of the great Empire of Britain, Canada owes a willing allegiance to the Sovereign; but the executive government and legislature of the Province are, practically, independent

*Exercises.*—Describe the physical features. What is said of the Eastern Townships? Describe the Gaspé district and its surface. For what is the coast of Gaspé memorable?



of Imperial control. With her people, loyalty to the Sovereign, obedience to the laws, love for mankind, and reverence for sacred things, are felt to be duties enjoined by the imperative injunction to "HONOR ALL MEN; LOVE THE BROTHERHOOD; FEAR GOD; HONOR THE KING."

**2. Elements of the Constitution.**—Our Constitution is founded upon that of England. It is embodied in Acts of the Imperial and Canadian Parliaments, and based upon those great national compacts which are embraced in the following historical documents :

#### I. NATIONAL AND FUNDAMENTAL COMPACTS.

**3. Magna Charta**, or the Great Charter, granted by King John, at Runnymede, near Windsor, in 1215, and again by Henry III. 1224. It secures to us personal freedom, a constitutional form of government, trial by jury, free egress to and from the kingdom, and equitable and speedy justice.

**4. The Charta de Foresta**, granted by King John, 1215, abolished the royal privilege of hunting all over the kingdom, and restored to the lawful owners their woods and forests.

**5. Confirmatio Chartarum**, or Confirmation of the Great Charters (which were then made Common Law), and the Charter of the Forest, made by Edward I. in 1267.

**6. The Statute of Treasons**, granted by Edward III. in 1305, at the request of Parliaments, defined treason, and put an end to judicial doubt or caprice in the matter. Treason was still more clearly defined in the Act 36, Geo. III. ch. 7.

**7. The Petition of Right**, a parliamentary declaration of the rights and liber-

ties of the subject, was assented to by Charles I. in 1627.

**8. The Habeas Corpus Act**, passed in the reign of Charles II. in 1769. It compels persons in charge of a prisoner to bring his body and warrant of commitment before a judge, within a specified time, so as to inquire into the legality of his arrest. The judge's writ of habeas corpus may be demanded as a right, and cannot be refused, under penalty of a fine.

**9. The Bill of Rights** declared the rights of the subject; and limited the succession of the crown after the English revolution of 1688. It was passed in the first year of the reign of William and Mary.

**10. Other Acts.**—The other more important Acts passed since 1688, related to religious toleration; to the settlement of the succession to the crown (also limiting the Royal prerogative); the independence of Parliament; and to Catholic Emancipation. These Acts form part of our Canadian Constitution, as well as the following :

#### II. IMPERIAL ACTS.

**11. The Treaty of Paris**, in 1763, ceded Canada to the Crown of England

*Exercises.*—How does Canada appreciate her political advantages? What sacred injunction influences her people? Give the elements of our Colonial Constitution, and mention the national compacts.

This treaty secured to the people of Lower Canada the free exercise of their religion, laws, and institutions. In 1763, the English laws were introduced by royal proclamation; but by the—

**12. Quebec Act of 1774**, the proclamation was annulled, and the ancient *Coutume de Paris* (Custom of Paris) restored in civil matters. By this Act, the English criminal law was perpetuated, and

a supreme legislative council established.

**13. The Constitutional Act of 1791**, divided the Province into Upper and Lower Canada; introduced the representative system of government; and set apart the Clergy Reserve lands. Under its authority the Upper Canada Parliament introduced the English law.

**14. The Union Act of 1840**, united the provinces of Upper and Lower Canada.

### III. CANADIAN ACTS.

**15. The Representation Act**, the Franchise Act, and the Independence of Parliament Act, passed in 1853.

**16. The Legislative Council** made elective in 1856. (*See pages 23 and 40.*)

**17. The Seigniorial Tenure**, abolished in Lower Canada, and the proceeds of the Clergy Reserve Lands of Upper Canada

applied to municipal purposes, in 1855-7.

**18. Municipal Institutions** introduced into Upper Canada in 1847, and into Lower Canada in 1847-55.

**19. Systems of Education** devised for Upper and Lower Canada, in 1841-6.

**20. The Law of Primogeniture** in Upper and Lower Canada repealed in 1851.

### CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

**21. Executive Government.**—The system of Government is monarchical, in its most popular form. The Queen is represented by a Governor. The Executive consists of a Governor General and a Cabinet Council comprising ten officers, or heads of departments, viz.: Speaker of the Legislative Council, Attorney General for Upper Canada, Attorney General for Lower Canada, the Minister of Finance, Receiver General of the Public Revenue, Commissioner of Crown Lands, Commissioner of Public Works, Postmaster General, Provincial Secretary, and Minister of Agriculture. The Members of the Cabinet are appointed by the Governor, and hold office (unless removed) so long as they can retain the confidence and support of the Legislature, in which they must hold seats. [In this respect our system differs from the American. In the United States, the Members of the Cabinet, appointed by the President, hold office for four years, and are independent of Congress. They cannot be changed during the President's four years' tenure of office, except by his consent.]

**22. The Legislature** consists of three branches: 1. The Queen (represented by the Governor); 2. The Legislative Council; and, 3. The House of Assembly. The consent of each branch is necessary before a bill can become law.

**23. The Governor General** is selected by the Crown, and generally holds office for six years. He is guided by general, or special, instructions; by law and usage; and reports on public matters, from time to

time, by despatches to the Imperial Government. He is the chief executive officer, grants marriage licenses, and is commander-in-chief of the militia. He assembles, prorogues, and dissolves parliament, and assents to all unreserved bills passed by it previous to their becoming law. Reserved bills await Her Majesty's pleasure; and any law can be disallowed by the Queen within two years from the date of its passing.

**24. The Legislative Council** corres-

---

*Exercises.*—Give the Imperial and Canadian elements of the constitution of Canada. What are the chief features of her civil government—the Executive and Legislative? Describe them.

ponds to the House of Lords in England, or to the Senate of Congress in the United States. The members were formerly appointed by the Crown for life; but they are now elected for eight years—each electoral district returning one member. The old members retain their seats for life, unless disqualified. The Speaker is appointed by the Governor, and is a member of the Cabinet. The Council can originate any but a money bill. It may also reject any bill passed by the Assembly. It can be dissolved by the Governor. There are forty eight electoral divisions—twenty-four in each Province. (See pages 23 and 39.)

**25. The House of Assembly** corresponds to the House of Commons in England and to the House of Representatives in the United States. It consists of 130 members (65 from Lower Canada and 65 from Upper Canada,) elected by freeholders and householders in counties, cities, and towns. The Speaker is elected by the House, for each parliamentary term of four years. This branch can originate any bill. It controls the revenue and expenditure of the Province. The forms of procedure in both branches of the Legislature are similar to those of the Imperial Parliament.

### JUDICIARY.

**NOTE**—The chief features of the original constitution of the Superior Courts are given; but in Upper Canada the Courts of Queen's Bench and Common Pleas have now very nearly the same co-ordinate powers and jurisdiction.

**26. The Superior Courts of Upper Canada** are; 1. *Queen's Bench*, presided over by a Chief Justice and two puisné Judges. This is the highest Common Law Court; it has almost exclusive authority in criminal matters, and can compel all inferior courts and public officers to perform acts required of them. 2. *Chancery*, presided over by a Chancellor and two Vice-Chancellors. It is a Court of Equity, and is designed to supply, in civil matters, the deficiencies of other Courts, either in their machinery or rigid adherence to peculiar forms. 3. *Common Pleas*, presided over by a Chief Justice and two puisné Judges, has more special jurisdiction between subject and subject. The Judges of the Queen's Bench and Common Pleas hold the Courts of Assize, in the various counties, twice a year. 4. *Error and Appeal*, presided over by the Chief Justice of Upper Canada, and is composed of all the Superior Judges and an ex-judge. Its name and composition indicate its jurisdiction and authority.

**27. The other Courts** are; 1. *Heir and Devisee*, to determine claims of land from the Crown. 2. *Probate and Surrogate* to give legal effect to wills and to the ad-

ministration of estates. 3. *County Courts*, with equity powers, to try all civil cases under \$200 and \$400. 4. *Courts of Quarter Sessions*, to try cases of larceny and other petty offences. 5. *Recorders' Courts* are Quarter Sessions for cities. 6. *Division Courts* try summarily, in divisions of counties, small civil cases. 7. *Insolvent Debtors' Courts*, held by County Judges.

**28. The Superior Courts of Lower Canada** are; 1. The *Queen's Bench*, which has one Chief Justice and four puisné Judges. It hears appeals, and gives judgment in serious criminal matters. 2. The *Superior* has one Chief Justice and seven-teen puisné Judges. It gives judgment in cases and appeals from the Inferior Courts. 3. The *Admiralty*, which has one Judge. It tries maritime cases.

**29. The other Courts** are: 4. *Commissioners*, in parishes, for trying civil cases under \$25. 5. *Quarter Sessions*; and 6. *Special Magistrates*.

**30. Final Appeal**—There is a Final Appeal, in all civil cases over \$2,000, from the Superior Courts of Upper and Lower Canada, to the Judicial Committee of Her Majesty's Privy Council in England.

*Exercises*.—What is said of the Legislative Council and the House of Assembly? What Courts exist in Upper and Lower Canada? Describe them. In what cases can a final appeal be made?



## TRADE AND COMMERCE—CANALS AND RAILWAYS.

**31. Commercial Facilities.**—Few countries, with the same amount of revenue, have done so much to develop trade and commerce as Canada. Stimulated by the munificence of the GIVER OF ALL GOOD, in conferring upon the Province the magnificent lakes and extensive rivers which she possesses, the Legislature has still further increased her facilities for internal communication and trade, by promoting the construction of numerous canals and railroads, with their invaluable adjuncts, the telegraphic lines. The postal system is also very complete. Canada has reciprocity arrangements with Great Britain, the British North American Colonies, and the United States. They refer principally to the free exchange of the natural products of each country. Canada has also a decimal currency and silver coinage.

**32. Imports.**—The annual value of the imports into Canada, is between \$40,000,000 and \$50,000,000. In 1856, it was \$43,600,000:—\$18,000,000 from Great Britain; \$23,000,000, from the United States; and \$1,000,000 from the North American Colonies. The chief imports are woollens, cottons, silks, iron, tobacco, tea, and sugar.

**33. Exports.**—The annual value is between \$30,000,000 and \$40,000,000. In 1856 it was \$32,000,000 and included: Produce of the mine, \$165,000; sea, \$500,000; and forest, \$10,000,000. Animals and their produce, \$2,500,000; agricultural products, \$15,000,000; manufactures and ships, \$1,600,000. Exports to great Britain,

\$10,500,000; United States, \$18,500,000; British North American Colonies, \$1,000,000. About 30,000,000 bushels of wheat are grown annually. Fisheries are promoted.

**34. Manufactures** are principally woollen, iron, glass, Indian-rubber, cabinet ware, soap, candles, &c., for domestic use.

**35. Revenue.**—The net revenue in 1856, was about \$6,000,000. Customs, \$4,500,000. Public Works, \$500,000; Crown Lands, \$500,000, Casual, \$320,000.

**36. Expenditure** in 1856 was \$5,200,000; Interest, nearly \$1,000,000; Civil Government, \$225,000; Legislation, \$450,000; Justice, \$450,000; Education, \$380,000; Collection of Revenue, \$940,000.

**37. The Canals of Canada** are extensive and important. Their total length is 216 miles. They are as follows:

**38. Welland,** connects Lakes Erie and Ontario, and thus overcomes the Niagara Falls. Its length is 28 miles. It has twenty-nine locks, and surmounts 334 feet. There are two entrances on Lake Erie—Ports Maitland and Colborne; and one on Lake Ontario—Port Dalhousie. It was projected by the Hon. W.H. Merritt, in 1818–24, and completed in 1829. It has been further enlarged. Total cost about \$5,500,000.

**39. Rideau,** connects Lake Ontario with the River Ottawa. It is 126½ miles long.

has 47 locks, and surmounts an aggregate elevation of 475 feet, viz., 165 from Kingston up to Lake Rideau, and 292 from Lake Rideau down to the Ottawa. The entrance at Kingston is by the Cataragui River; and the outlet, at Ottawa, by the Rideau River. It was commenced in 1826, and was originally constructed by the British Government for military purposes. It cost \$3,560,000.

**40. St. Lawrence,** consists of a series of canals extending from near Prescott to the entrance of Lake St. Louis as follows:

*Exercises.*—What are the commercial facilities of Canada—her imports, exports, manufactures, revenue, and expenditure? Describe the canals, and trace them on the map.



1. *Williamsburgh*, four in number;  $9\frac{1}{2}$  miles long, with six locks, and designed to surmount the rapids at Galops, Point Iroquois, Rapid Plat, and Farran's Point. 2. *Cornwall*, at the Long Sault Rapids;  $11\frac{1}{2}$  miles long, with seven locks. 3. *Beauharnois*, from the foot of Lake St. Francis to the head of Lake St. Louis;  $11\frac{1}{2}$  miles long, with nine locks, and surmounts the rapids at Côteau, the Cèdres, and the Cascades. Total cost, \$5,500,000. The obstructions in the intermediate navigation of the St. Lawrence have also been very lately removed.

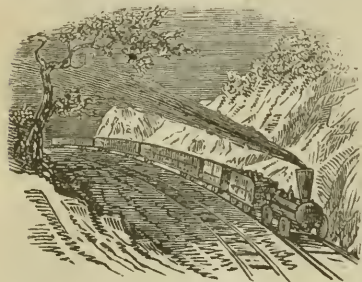
41. *Ottawa*, as follows; 1. *Chats*, between the Chats and Chaudière Lakes, near the city of Ottawa. 2. *Carillon*, two miles

long, with three locks. 3. *Grenville*,  $5\frac{1}{2}$  miles long with seven locks. 4. *St. Anne's* lock at Ste. Anne's Rapids (celebrated in Moore's "Canadian Boat Song.") 5. *Lachine*, from the Rapids at the foot of Lake St. Louis, to Montreal;  $8\frac{1}{2}$  miles long, with five locks.

42. *Chambly*, extends from St. John's to Chambly, on the Richelieu River,  $11\frac{1}{2}$  miles. With St. Ours' Lock, it completes the navigation from the St. Lawrence to Lake Champlain. Cost \$500,000. A canal by another route is in contemplation.

43. *Burlington*, connects Burlington Bay, at Hamilton, with Lake Ontario.

44. *Railways of Canada*.—Within the last few years, the railway system of Canada has been rapidly developed. In 1850, there were only two short railways. In 1857, there were fourteen, with an aggregate length of 1,667 miles. A Canadian line of ocean steamships have also been successfully established. The two principal railways in Canada are the Grand Trunk and the Great Western. The Grand Trunk line, when completed, will extend to 1,026 miles, including the celebrated Victoria Tubular Bridge, of nearly two miles in length. (See illustration on page 36.) The Suspension Bridge on the Great Western line is also a wonderful structure. (See illustration on page 16.) A tubular bridge is also projected near this bridge, and one at Fort Erie. The following are the completed and projected railways of Canada, in 1858:—



#### 45 I. Railways completed, or under contract:

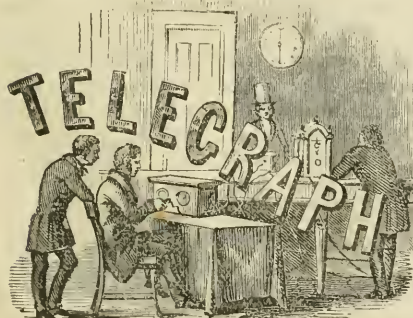
RAILWAYS.	MILES <sup>s</sup>	REMARKS.
(1) Champlain and St. Lawrence	43	Cost \$1,600,000, and connects Montreal with Lake Champlain. This was the first railway in Canada.
(2) Montreal and New York..... (Nos. 1 and 2 are now amalgamated.)	39	Cost \$1,100,000; extends to the Province line; includes the Lachine Railway, and a Ferry two miles in length.
(3) Grand Trunk .....	962	Cost \$60,000,000, and connects Portland (Maine) and Quebec with Sarnia, Upper Canada. At Richmond the line divides into branches; one running to Portland, the other to Quebec. Has an extension to Trois-Pistoles, &c.
(4) Ottawa and Prescott.....	54	Joins the Grand Trunk Railway at Prescott, opposite Ogdensburgh (New York.)
(5) Cobourg and Peterboro' .....	28 $\frac{1}{2}$	Joins the Grand Trunk Railway and Steamers at Cobourg. May extend to Marmora.
(6) Port Hope and Lindsay .....	42	Joins the Grand Trunk Railway and lake steamers at Port Hope. It is proposed to extend the line to Lakes Simcoe and Huron.

*Exercises.*—Describe, and trace on the map, the St. Lawrence, Ottawa, Chambly, and Burlington Bay Canals. What is said of the railways of Canada? Trace them also on the map.

RAILWAYS.	MILES.	REMARKS.
(7) Ontario, Simcoe, and Huron (Northern Railway.)	95	Cost \$3,300,000, and extends from Toronto to Collingwood, on Nottawasaga Bay. Steamers connect with this line on Lakes Simcoe, Huron, and Ontario.
(8) Hamilton and Toronto.....	38	A branch of the Great Western Railway, connecting the two cities.
(9) Great Western .....	229	Cost \$14,000,000. Passing through Upper Canada, it connects the States of New York and Michigan (Niagara Falls and Detroit.) It has a branch to Galt, Sarnia, &c.
(10) Galt and Guelph.....	26	Connects with the Great Western Railway at Galt. Passes through Preston to Guelph. May extend to Owen Sound.
(11) London and Port Stanley....	24	A feeder to the Great Western Railway, extending to Port Stanley, on Lake Erie.
(12) Buffalo (U.S.) & Lake Huron	160	Designed to connect Lake Erie (opposite Buffalo, United States) with Lake Huron, at Goderich. Crosses the Great Western at Paris, and the Grand Trunk at Stratford.
(13) Erie and Ontario .....	18	Extends from the mouth of the Niagara River to Chippewa; thence to Buffalo, by steamer. Connects with the Great Western Railway at the Suspension Bridge.
(14) Welland.....	25	Will run parallel to the Welland Canal. Connects Port Dalhousie and Colborne.
(15) Woodstock and Lake Erie....	80	May extend along Lake Erie, either way.
Total Miles.....	1892	

#### 46. II. Projected and Partly Completed Railways:

(16) Great Southern .....	230	To run parallel to the Great Western Railway along the shore of Lake Erie.
(17) Grand Junction .....	50	An extension of the Grand Trunk Railway from Belleville to Peterboro' and Lake Huron.
(18) London and St. Mary's .....	—	An extension from Port Stanley to St. Mary's, passing through London.
(19) Brockville, Perth, and Ottawa	120	To connect with the Grand Trunk Railway.
(20) North Shore.....	—	To connect Quebec with Lake Huron, along the north shore of the St. Lawrence, and south of the Ottawa rivers, &c.
(21) St. Maurice .....	.....	(See pages 29 and 35.)
(22) Toronto & L. Huron (Central)	40½	To connect Lakes Ontario and Erie.
(23) Hamilton and Port Dover ...	40½	To connect Lakes Ontario and Huron.
(24) Whitby and Lake Huron ....	—	



47. Simultaneously with the system of railways, corresponding lines of telegraph have been established throughout Canada. The principal public telegraphs are the Montreal line, extending, with its branches, to all the principal cities and towns in Canada, and, by connection, to the Eastern Provinces and to the United States; and House's Montreal and New York line which extends 34 miles to the Province line, and thence to New York.

48. Post Offices are established in 1,400 places in Canada. The post routes extend to an aggregate distance of 12,000 miles. An uniform rate of five cents

*Exercises.*—Trace on the map the projected railways. What is said of the telegraphs? Trace them along the railway lines. What is said of post-offices?

conveys a letter to or from any part of Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward's Island;  $12\frac{1}{2}$  to Newfoundland,  $12\frac{1}{2}$  to Great Britain and Ireland, by Canadian steamers (16 by Cunard steamers); 10 cents to any of the United States

except California and Oregon (which is 15 cents.) Canadian letters may be registered for two cents, American for five cents, and English for ten cents. Money-orders are granted on various post offices in Canada and England at a very trifling charge.

## VIII. THE INDIANS OF BRITISH AMERICA.

1. Although the Indian tribes which have been scattered over the entire continent were very numerous, they have been all found to belong to eight or ten distinct groups or families. Four of these occupied the present area of Canada, viz.: I. The Eskimo, who, in their *physique*, but still more in their manners, belief, and superstitious customs, resembled the natives of Lapland and Greenland; II. The Chippeweyans (who should not be confounded with the Chippewas, or Ojibwas), including the following tribes: (1) The Dog-ribs (les Plats-côtés des Chiens); (2) The Hares (les Peaux de Lièvres); (3) The Yellow-knives (les Couteaux Jaunes); (4) The Slaves (les Esclaves); (5) The Deer-eaters (les Mangeurs de Caribous); and, (6) The Beaver (les Castors); III. The Algonquin; and, IV. The Huron-Iroquois. Each of these four groups or families spoke a distinct language, having no affinity to the other. The four groups were subdivided into various tribes, each speaking a separate



INDIAN WARRIOR.

dialect of their original tongue, yet among all the tribes a remarkable similarity in customs and institutions prevailed. In color, form, temperament, religious belief, and pursuits, all were alike. The men engaged in war, hunting, and fishing; while the women performed all other kinds of labor.

2. **Domestic Habits.**—The wigwags of the Indians were of the simplest construction, being poles covered with matting made from the bark of trees. Their implements were made of bones, shells, and stones. Meat they roasted on the points of sticks, or boiled in stone or earthen vessels. They dressed in skins, with or without the fur. Some Indian tribes derived

their names from the mode of wearing these skins. Thus the Rocky Mountain Indians were called Chippeweyan, from the manner in which they wore



INDIAN WIGWAM.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the great Indian groups of British America? What is common and what peculiar to all? Describe the domestic habits of the Indians.

the skins gathered round their necks. Their chief ornaments were feathers, porcupine-quills, bones, or shells. They tattooed, as well as painted, their faces and bodies.

**3. Hieroglyphics.**—Indian treaties were generally hieroglyphical, as were also



RECORD OF A PARTY OF NINE.

all their recorded deeds. The foregoing hieroglyphics give an account of a warlike foray. The nine paddles in the canoe indicate nine warriors; the figures represent prisoners, with tomahawk, bow, arrow, war-club, &c. One prisoner is beheaded; another with the shading below, is a woman. The fire and animals indicate a council held by chiefs of the bear and turtle tribes.

**3a. The Totem**, or outline of some animal, from *do-daim*, a family mark, was always the chief signature to a treaty. The totem, and not the personal name, was generally inscribed on the tomb. The following were totems of the chief tribes:



TURTLE:  
MOHAWK TOTEM.

Tribes.	Locality.	Totem.
Algonquin.....	Montreal .....	A green oak.
Nepissing.....	Two Mountains .....	A heron.
Ottawas.....	Ottawa River .....	A grey squirrel
Tabittikis.....	Lake Temiscaming .....	An eagle.
Iroquois(Six Nations.) }	United States and .....	{ Wolf, bear, deer, &c.
	Canada .....	
Hurons.....	Of Lake Huron .....	Cord, rock, &c.
Ojibwas.....	Lake Superior.....	Loon and bear.
Missesaucaas (River Indians).....	St. Clair, Quinté } Toronto, &c ... }	A crane.
Petuns .....	Huron and Georgian Peninsula }	Wolf and stag.

*Exercises.*—Decipher the hieroglyphics given. Is the calumet? Describe the weapons, and state

**4. Wampum.**—Indian money, consisted of white or purple tubes, made of the inside of the conch or clam shells, either fastened on belts or strung like beads, and called wampum. Each bead had a determined value. Wampum was used either in trade or politics.

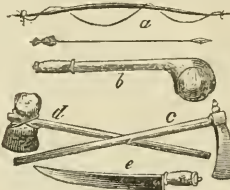


WAMPUM.

Wampum belts were the official records of alliance, and, in the hands of a chief, were the ratification of treaties of friendship, &c.

**5. The Calumet**, or peace-pipe, was made of clay or stone, and ornamented; and when smoked by the sachems with an enemy or a stranger, it indicated peace and fidelity.

**6. The Weapons** of war or of the chase, consisted of



INDIAN WEAPONS.



CALUMETS.

(a) bow and arrow; (b) war club; (c) tomahawk; (d) stone hatchet; and (e) scalping-knife; and spear. War was the chief occupation of the Indians, either among themselves, or, in later times, against the white settlements.

Forty braves or warriors constituted an ordinary war-party, under a chief but sometimes six or



PALISADED BUILDINGS.

Explain the totem. What is wampum? What was the object of palisaded buildings.



nine ventured out upon the "war-path" alone. For protection, the colonists had to erect timber-palisades about their dwellings, and around which the Indian would stealthily watch for his victim. (*See the illustration on the preceding page.*)

**7. Burial.**—The dead were usually placed on a high scaffold, either sitting or lying. Sometimes they were wrapped in skins, and laid on sticks in a pit. Weapons, food, paints, &c., were placed beside



SCAFFOLD BURIAL.

them for their use in the "happy hunting grounds beyond the setting sun."

**10. The Indians of Canada.**—The principal groups of Indians which occupied the area of Canada at the time of its discovery, were the Adirondacks (the Algonquins proper,) and the Huron-Iroquois. The Hurons, on their arrival, remained in Canada; but the Iroquois removed to New York. (*See No. 14. page 47.*) After the war of the American Revolution, some of the Iroquois, or Six Nation Indians, who had previously subdued their brethren the Eries and the Hurons, removed to Canada, and settled on lands granted to them by King George III. (*See No. 16, page 48.*) The minor tribes are noticed in detail.

**11. The Algon-quins,** or Ad-i-ron-dacks, with the Huron-Iroquois, are said to have descended from the north, by the Ottawa (or Utawas) river, at the close of the 15th century, and to have occupied the left bank of the St. Lawrence. They were called Adirondacks (or bark-eaters), in derision, by the Iroquois. They received the generic name of Algonquins from the French. In Indian they were called *Odis quagume*,—"People at the end of the water." In arts and other attainments they excelled the Iroquois. They are supposed to have been at the head of a great northern confederacy similar to that of the Six Nation Indians. In later times they were allies of the French and Wyandots, in their wars against the No-do-was, or Iroquois. The

**8. The Religion** of the Indians consisted chiefly in the belief of a good and evil spirit. There were no infidels among them. Although they defied the heavenly bodies and the elements, they pre-eminently adored the Great Manitou, or Master of Life. They had dim traditions of the creation, the deluge, and of the great atonement.

**9. The Sachem,** or head of a tribe, was frequently an hereditary monarch and sometimes owed his elevation to his prowess or oratorical powers. He could be deposed; but while in power he was supreme. In council composed of the elders, he presided as umpire, and to his decision all bowed with submission. A chief was subordinate to the sachem, and was the leader of a war-party.

principal tribes of the Algonquin group settled in British North America, were: (1) The Montagnais du Saguenay (Saguenay Mountaineers); (2) The Têtes de boules (the Bull-heads of the St. Maurice); (3) The Ottawas; (4) The Ojibwas, or Chippewas of Lake Superior and River Winnipeg (Sautaux of the French); (5) The Mashkégons of the River Nelson and the Crees (les Cris) of the River Saskatchewan. No tribe of this group has been found west of the Rocky Mountains; nor have any tribe of the Chippewayan group been found east of the Hudson's Bay.

**12. The Ot-ta-was,** or Ut-a-was. A tradition of this tribe asserts that they were members of a northern confederacy—(*see Algonquins*)—that they migrated and se-

*Exercises.*—Describe the Indian mode of burial, and state what was their religious belief. Who was the sachem? Give the principal Indian tribes of Canada, and a sketch of the Algonquins.

parated; the Adirondacks fixing their hunting-grounds near Quebec, the Hurons along the Upper Lakes, and the Ottawas near Michilimackinac and Detroit. They exacted tribute from the tribes passing through their territory. They are chiefly noted for their famous union, under their chief Pontiac, with the Ojibwas, Sacs, Senecas, Pottawottamies, and others for the capture of nine British posts, in 1763. The capture of Michilimackinac was entrusted

to the Ojibway and Sac Indians. On the 4th June, 1763 (King George's birthday), Minavavana, an Ojibway chief, invited the English to witness a game at ball. Having played up to the gate of the fort, the Indians rushed in, seized and massacred the garrison, except a few who escaped. Pontiac alone failed at Detroit. (See "*Biography*." ) Remnants of the Ottawas are now settled on the Manitoulin Islands, in Lake Huron.



STRAITS AND ISLAND OF MICILIMACKINAC, AT THE ENTRANCE TO LAKE MICHIGAN.

**13. The O-jib-wa**, or Od-jib-way, [plural Odjibwäig] occupied the shores of Lake Superior, and included the Mes-sag-sag-nes (or Mis-se-sau-gas), who occupied the area at the mouth of a river called by their name, lying between Point Tesselon and La Cloche, on the north shore of Lake Huron. The Ojibways sheltered the flying Hurons, and defeated their pursuers at Point Iroquois, Lake Superior. The Ojibways and Missesaugas are both called by different writers Chip-pe-ways. (The Chip-pe-way-ans are a Rocky Mountain tribe.) Remnants of the Ojibways are now settled at Alnwick, Rice Lake, New Credit, Sarnia, and Lakes Simcoe and Couchiching. The Chippewa, like the Algonquin of old, is now the common business language of the Indians, and is as necessary among them as French is among Europeans.

**14. The Wy-an-dots**, or Hurons, claim to have been originally at the head of the Iroquois group of tribes. They occupied

the northern shores of the St. Lawrence (westward from the present site of Montreal), Lake Ontario, Lake Simcoe, &c. After their alliance with the Adirondacks, the Iroquois waged a war of extermination against them, and pursued them up the Ottawa to the Manitoulin Islands (in the lake since called Huron), to Mich-il-i-mack-i-nac, and to the northern shores of Lake Superior. Here the Ojibways sheltered them, and defeated the Iroquois at Point Iroquois, or the "place of the Iroquois bones." The French missionaries afterwards collected the scattered remnants of the tribe, and settled them at the village of Lorette, near Quebec.

**15. The Minor Tribes** of, or bordering on, Canada, were; (1) The Petun (or Tobacco) Indians [Ti-on-non-to-tes], who occupied the peninsula lying between Georgian Bay and Lake Huron. Routed by the Iroquois, they fled, in 1650, to Missouri. (2) The At-ti-wen-da-ronk, or "Neutral Na-

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the Ottawas, the Ojibways, the Wyandots, and the minor tribes of the Indians of Canada. Point out on the map the position of Michilimackinac.

tion" (speaking a Huron dialect), so called from their original neutrality in the wars between the Iroquois and four tribes of Hurons, at Lake Huron. This peaceful tribe occupied a part of the Canadian shore of Lake Ontario and both sides of the Niagara river. Having at length aided the weaker Hurons, they were attacked and reduced to servitude by the Iroquois, in 1646-50. (3) The Eries (or Cat Nation of the French), are supposed to be identical with the Ca-taw-bas, who fled before the Iroquois to South Carolina, in 1656-8. They occupied the southern shore of Lake Erie, and have left evidences of their former power in the inscriptions on the rocks of Cunningham Island. Some writers think that the Eries

were the neutral nation spoken of, or were at the head of a neutral alliance of tribes occupying the area between Lakes Erie and Ontario. (4) The An-das-tes, near Buffalo, were, after sixteen years' war with the Iroquois, subdued in 1672, and fled down the Allegany river. (5) The Pot-to-wat-to-mies, originally from Green Bay, Michigan, now reside in Kansas, and a few at Owen Sound. (6) The Nip-is-sings, near the lake of that name. (7) A few Mun-seys (De-la-wares); and (8) Nan-ti-cokes, branches of the Le-ni Le-na-pes (or original people), are settled in the western part of the Province, near London. (9) The At-ti-kam-i-ques, in the north of Canada, were destroyed by the pestilence of 1670.

**16. The Huron Iroquois** group or family included: (1) The Six Nation Indians; and, (2) The Hurons (Wyandots) as well as the following tribes: (3) The Sioux (Dakotas); (4) The Assiniboines (Sioux of the rocks, from *Assina* (Ojibway), rocks or stones, and *buoin*, or *puán*, a Sioux (or little Iroquois); and, (5) The Blackfeet (*les pieds noirs*.) Of these we refer now only to the celebrated Six Nation Indians. The history of these Indians, although chiefly identified with that of the State of New York, is also intimately connected with that of Canada. As a confederacy, they were the faithful allies of the English Crown from the earliest colonial times until the close of the American Revolution. The Six Nations embraced the following cantons, or tribes: (1) The Mohawks; (2) Oneidas; (3) Onondagas; (4) Cayugas; (5) Senecas; and (6) The Tuscaroras. At the close of the revolutionary war, the Mohawks, Cayugas, Onondagas, and others, removed to Canada, and settled: 1st. At Brantford, on the Grand River (so called after Brant, the celebrated Mohawk chief), where they received a grant from the Crown of 160,000 acres along both sides of the river to its mouth; 2nd. At Tyendinaga, on the Bay of Quinté (so called also after Brant's Indian name); and, 3rd. On the River Thames. In 1671, a portion of the Mohawks settled at Sault St. Louis, near Montreal.

**17. Origin and Settlement.**—The origin of the Iroquois is very obscure. Their own tradition is that they originally descended the river Ottawa, and resided, as a small tribe, at Hochelaga (Montreal.) They were subject to the Adirondacks, and from them learned the arts of husbandry and war. Becoming numerous, they sought to secure their independence; but being vanquished, they were compelled to fly. Having ascended the St. Lawrence, and coasted the southern shore of Lake Ontario, they entered the Oswego river, and scattered themselves in separate bands throughout various parts of the State of New York.

**18. Confederacy.**—Afterward, for mutual protection, and at the desire of the Onondagas, they formed a league, under the title of Ho-de-no-sau-nee, or "People of the Long House." This house extended from the River Hudson to the great lakes of Canada.

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the Huron-Iroquois group of Indians. What is said of their origin and settlement? Point out, on the map, the places mentioned.

The Mohawks guarded the eastern end, and the Senecas the western. The structure of this league suggested the union of the thirteen colonies in the revolutionary war—an union which was afterwards developed into the political compact of the present United States. The confederacy is supposed to have been formed in 1540. It was successfully maintained for upwards of 200 years; indeed it has never been formally dissolved. Originally it only included five cantons or nations; but, in 1712, the Tuscaroras, a southern tribe, were admitted, and became the sixth nation. The Ne-ca-ri-a-ges, a remnant of the Hurons at Mich-il-i-mack-i-nac (the "Great Turtle," abbreviated to Mack-i-naw), was nominally admitted, in 1723, as a seventh nation. By the Adirondacks, the Indians of this celebrated league were known as the Min-goes; Nod-o-was, or "Adder Enemy," by the Ojibwas and Hurons; Iroquois by the French; and Six Nations by the English. The French term "Iroquois" is founded on the Indian approbatory exclamations "Yoe! Haui!"

**19. Wars.**—In their protracted wars they extirpated the Eries; utterly destroyed the power of the Hurons; defeated the Adirondacks and Utawas, and thus placed Canada under their sway. In 1640-1670, they drove the An-das-tes and At-ti-ou-an-di-rons, or "Neutral Nation," and Petuns, from the Niagara Peninsula and the Lakes; and after their conquest of Canada, established colonies along the northern shores of Lake Ontario. In 1740 they reached their zenith; and after the close of the American Revolution, their power began gradually to decline (*See "Brant," in Biography.*)

## 20. INDIAN NAMES OF PLACES IN CANADA.

Present Name.	Indian Name.	Dialect.	Signification.
Kamouraska	A-kám-a-ras-kaw	Cree	Rushes at the water's edge.
Minzan Islands	Mah-in-gau	Do	A wolf.
Stadacona	I-ta-tak-wan	Do	A wing.
Quebec	Ke-pec	Do	It is closed.
Do.	Ke-a-donc-da-a-ga	Mohawk	Two points contiguous.
Montreal	Do-te-a-ga	Do	Almost broken.
St. Lawrence	Ga-na-wa-ga	Oneida	The rapid river.
Arthabaska	Ath-a-bas-ka	Cree	The place of hay, or rushes.
Cacouna	Ka-kou-nak	Do	Home of hedgehogs.
Chicoutimi	Ish-ko-ti-mew	Do	It is deep.
Temiscouata	Ti-mew-ishk-wa-taw	Do	Deep everywhere.
Shewanagan	Cha-bon-i-gan	Do	A needle, or passer through.
Yamachiche	I Yam-a-chi-che	Do	Mud at the bottom.
Yamaska	I Ya-mas-ka	Do	Rushes at the bottom.
Maskinongé	Mas-ki-nonge	Ojibway	A large lake pike.
Madawaska	Ma-ta-was-kaw	Do	River entering through rushes.
Missisquoi	Mish-i-ishk-wew	Cree	A great woman.
Rimouski	A-mi-moush-ki	Ojibway	Home of dogs.
Tadoussac	To-tou-shak	Cree	Conical mountains.
Lake St. John	Pey-ak-wag-a-mi	Do	A low lake.
Saguenay	Sak-i-nip	Do	Water coming on.
St. Regis	Ah-qua-sos-ne	Mohawk	Partridges drumming.
Caughnawaga	Caugh-ne-wa-ga	Do	Place of the Christians.
Ottawa River	Git-che-sip-pi	Ojibway	The great river.
Ottawa	Ot-a-wa	Do	An ear.
Lake of Two Mountains	Po-da-wand-um-eeg	Do	Broad waters.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the Iroquois confederacy and of their wars? Give some of the most popular Indian names of places and their signification. Point them out on the map also.



Present Name,	Indian Name.	Dialect.	Signification.
Lake St. Francis .....	Ga-na-sa-da-ga .....	Ojibwa .....	A side hill.
Gananoque .....	Ga-nan-o-que .....	Do .....	Rocks in deep water.
Kingston .....	Ga-dai-o-king .....	Mohawk .....	Fort in the water.
Cataract .....	Ga-da-roc-qui .....	Do .....	Rocks above water.
Napanee .....	Naw-paw-na .....	Ojibway .....	Flour.
Carrying Place .....	Gwa-u-gweh .....	Seneca .....	Trail to carry boats.
Consecon .....	Con-see-con .....	Ojibway .....	A pickerel.
Omemee .....	O-mee-me .....	Do .....	A pigeon.
Otonabee .....	O-to-na-bee .....	Do .....	A herring.
Bobcaygeon .....	Bob-cay-ge-on .....	Do .....	Rocks on both sides.
Seagow .....	Sen-gog .....	Do .....	Shallow water.
Oshawa .....	Os-saw-wa .....	Do .....	A perch.
Toronto .....	De-on-do .....	Mohawk .....	Trees in the water.
Spadina .....	Ish-pah-do-nah .....	Ojibway .....	A high hill.
Credit .....	Muh-ze-nah-e-ga-zee-be .....	Do .....	River where credit is given.
Etobicoke .....	Ah-do-be-kong .....	Do .....	Alder district.
Chingacousy .....	Shin-gwa-kouse-e-ke .....	Do .....	Young pine-tree district.
Eramosa .....	E-ne-mo-sa .....	Do .....	He walks alone.
Nassagaweya .....	Naush-e-sah-geh-way-aug .....	Do .....	River with two outlets.
Onondaga .....	On-nun-da-ga .....	Onondaga .....	On the hills.
Nottawasaga .....	Nod-do-wa-sah-ge .....	Do .....	Mouth of the Iroquois river.
Hamilton .....	De-o-na-sa-de-o .....	Mohawk .....	See above.
Burlington Bay .....	Do .....	Do .....	Sand bar.
Niagara River .....	O-ne-au-ga-rah .....	Seneca .....	A neck, or strait, between lakes.
Queenston .....	Do-che-ha-o .....	Mohawk .....	Mountain dies in the river.
Brock's Monument .....	Gus-ta-ote .....	Do .....	Do .....
Niagara Falls .....	Date-car-sko-sase .....	Seneca .....	The highest falls.
Chippewa .....	Jo-na-dak .....	Mohawk .....	Do .....
Grand River .....	Swag-eh .....	Ojibway .....	Flowing, or spreading, out.
Wawanosh .....	Wa-wa-nosh .....	Do .....	It sails well.
Lake Superior .....	Git-che-gu-mee .....	Do .....	Big sea water.
Lake St. Clair .....	Wa-we-a-tun-ong .....	Algonquin .....	A circular lake.
Temiscaming .....	Ti-mes-ga-uing .....	Ojibway .....	Deep water lake.
Michilimackinack .....	Mish-il-i-mac-i-nak .....	Do .....	A great turtle.
Sault Ste. Marie .....	Pah-wah-teeg .....	Do .....	A rapid.
Nipissing .....	Nip-is-ing .....	Do .....	Little lake.
Saskatchewan .....	Kish-ish-ad-ji-wan .....	Cree .....	Rapid current.
Winnipeg .....	Win-ni-pig .....	Do .....	Dirty water.
Manitoulin .....	O-taw-mi-nis .....	Ojibway .....	The island of the Ottawa.
Manitouahning .....	Mah-nae-tow-ah-ning .....	Do .....	The cave of the spirit.
Penetanguishene .....	Pe-ne-tan-gui-sheen .....	Do .....	Running sand.
Matchadash .....	Mudge-e-dush .....	Do .....	Marshy land.
Lake Simcoe .....	Shain-e-ong .....	Do .....	Do .....
Saugeen .....	Mis-sis-sau-geen .....	Do .....	Great mouth of rivers.
Couchiching .....	Couch-i-ching .....	Do .....	The lake source of a river.
River Severn .....	Wa-nant-git-che-ang .....	Do .....	Round-a-bout river.

21. Other names—(1) Ontario is a compound word from the Huron dialect. *On*, from Onondio, a hill; *tar*, from tarak, rocks upstanding in water, and *io*, beautiful water scene. The full meaning is, a beautiful prospect of hills, rocks and water. The lake was called Cadaracqui by the Iro-

quois, from *Kau* a fixture, *ak*, upright rock, and *qui*, flowing waters. It was also called De Tracy by the French.

(2) Erie, from the Huron dialect, is supposed to be derived from Erigas, or châts (wild cat or lynx), the name of a tribe of

*Note.*—The teacher can exercise his discretion in regard to these names. They are taken from the best authority accessible. In some cases, opinions differ as to the orthography of particular names.

Indians on its borders. On Colden's map the lake is called Okswago.

(3) **Huron**, so called from the Huron Indians, who fled to the lake from the Iroquois. It is supposed to be derived from the old French word *hure*, a wild bear,—referring to the Huron mode of wearing the hair.

(4) **Superior** obtained its name from being higher in the great chain of lakes. It was also called *Git chi-gam-i*, or *Git-che-gu-mee*, "Big Sea-water."

(5) **Iroquois Cantons**.—The designation of the cantons of the Six Nations Indians has been given to several localities, viz.: Iroquois, Mohawk, Oneida, Onondaga, Cayuga, Seneca, and Tuscarora. Also the names of three celebrated chiefs, viz.: Brant (Thyendanegea), Tecumseth, and Pontiac.

(6) **Canada**.—The derivation of the word "Canada" is variously given. A Castilian tradition states, that the Spaniards visited the country before the French, and having found no mines, exclaimed frequently, "Acánada,"—"Here is nothing." The Natives repeated the expression to the next European comers. Charlevoix derives it from the Iroquois word "*Kan-a-ta*," a village or collection of huts—a word used by Brant, in his translation of the Gospel of St. Matthew, to signify a village.

(7) **Quebec**.—The Indian origin of the name "Quebec" is given by Champlain and L'Escarbot. The Mickmaks and other Algonquin tribes use the word *Kepak* or *Kepek* to designate the closing of a river.

It may also owe its origin to "*Quel-bec*!" the exclamation of the French, when they first saw the promontory of Cape Diamond.

(8) **Montreal** (*Ho-che-la-ga*) is a contraction of "*Mont-Royal*," the name given to the mountain by Jacques Cartier.

(9) **Various**.—*Lobo*, a wolf, and *Ore*, gold,—are Spanish. *Mara* was so called from its bad water. *Rama* from its high position; both are Scripture names. *Orillia* takes its name from a wild plant growing there. *Flos*, *Tiny*, and *Tay* were named after three lap-dogs belonging to Lady Sarah Maitland. Sir Peregrine (when Lieut. Governor) and Lady Maitland also named several other townships in Upper Canada. It is much to be regretted that the beautiful Indian names have not been retained in more instances.

(10) **Indian Words** incorporated into our language are, canoe, maize, and *pikini* (child), from the Carib; *hakmatac* and *tamarack* (forest trees); *mink*, *moccasin* (Ojibway), *moose*, *muskelonge* (Ojibway) or *muskelungé* (*maskinongé*), a species of lake pike; *opossum*; *papoo* (*papouse*), an Indian child; *pemmican*, (buffalo meat mixed with tallow); *potato* (first found in Cuba); *raccoon*; *sachem*; *squaw*; *succatash* (green corn and beans mixed); *totem*; *tobacco* (from the West India Island of Tobago); *tomahawk* (Mahican origin); *tomato*; *wampum*, and *wigwam*, besides many others.

22. **The Indian Population** of Canada numbers 7,122; viz: Upper Canada, 3,065; Lower Canada, 4,058.

## VIII. HISTORY OF CANADA.

1. The History of Canada naturally divides itself into five periods, as follows:—I. Discovery and settlement, 125 years; II. French Colonial Government, 100 years; III. English Colonial Government of the Province of Quebec, 30 years; IV. Division of the Province, and separate

*Exercises*.—What Indian names have been retained? What is supposed to be the derivation of the names "Canada," "Quebec," and "Montreal?" What Spanish names, &c., are given?

government of Upper and Lower Canada, 50 years; and V. Re-union of the Provinces under one Government, from 1840 to the present time.

**2. Discovery.**—Although the coasts of Newfoundland and Labrador were visited by John and Sebastian Cabot, in 1497, it was not until 1534 that Canada was actually discovered. In that year, Jacques Cartier, a French Vice-Admiral, left St. Malo, in France, for America, and reached the coast of Gaspé on the festival of St. Laurent. In honor of the day, he gave the name of St. Lawrence to the magnificent gulf and river up whose waters he had sailed. He proceeded as far as Stadacona (Quebec) and Hochelaga (Montreal). He was received with kindness and dignity by the native Indians. On his return to France, he carried away with him the Huron chief, Donnacona. The chief did not long survive his exile. Cartier returned to Canada; but met with so many disasters, and was received with such evident hostility by the Indians, that he soon left for France, and shortly afterwards died.

**3. Settlement.**—For 70 years little was accomplished; but in 1608, Samuel de Champlain made the first successful attempt at settlement, and laid the foundation of the City of Quebec. He also discovered the beautiful Lake, since called Champlain, and penetrated into Upper Canada as far as the head waters of the Trent river.

**4. Early Indian Wars.**—For 50 years from the period of the settlement of Quebec, the infant colony and its Indian allies (the Adirondacks and Hurons,) were engaged in a series of contests with the Iroquois and their English allies. At the end of that period, the Iroquois had extended their sway over nearly the whole of Canada, west of Montreal; and even kept at bay, within their forts, the French rulers. Champlain and his successors made gallant efforts to shield their Indian allies; but they were

swept from their native soil, and driven far beyond the reach of French protection. The destruction of the Hurons and Eries by the fierce Iroquois, is a terrible episode in the Indian wars of these times.

**5. First Capture of Quebec.**—In 1627, the Government of Canada, or New France, was confided by Louis XIII. to the Company of 100 Associates. In 1629, Quebec was first captured by the English under Sir David Kertk; but by the treaty of St. Germain's, in 1632, it was formally restored to France.

**6. Royal Government.**—In 1663, Canada was erected into a Royal Government, and M. de Mézy appointed Governor. The French civil code and laws were also introduced, and their administration entrusted to the Governor and a Supreme Council of five members.

**7. Commercial Privileges.**—For the promotion of trade, Louis XIV., aided by the great Colbert, established a West-India Company, and granted to it exclusive privileges. The chief trading post of this company was at Tadoussac, at the mouth of the Saguenay river. There was also one at the Catarqui river, (Kingston.)

**8. Fort Frontenac.**—In order to protect this trading monopoly, and to exclude the New York and New England colonists from traffic on the lakes, Count de Frontenac erected a fort on the site of the present City of Kingston, in 1673. The fort was afterwards rebuilt and strengthened by Sieur de la Salle, and efforts were made to extend the French trading posts as far west as Niagara and Detroit.

**9. French Exploration.**—At the suggestion of M. Talon (the Intendant), Louis Joliette was despatched to explore the western waters. He was accompanied by Father Marquette. These adventurous men tra-

*Exercises.*—Into what periods is Canadian history generally divided? Give them; and also an account of the discovery of Canada, its settlement, early Indian wars, capture of Quebec, &c.

versed the great lakes, and at length reached the famous Mississippi in 42° 30' N. lat. In 1678-1683, this river was again explored to its mouth, by the heroic *Sieur de la Salle*, *Father Hennepin*, and the *Chevalier de Tonti*.

**10. First Colonial Contests.**—In 1682, *Frontenac*, the chivalrous French governor, was recalled, and *M. la Barre* appointed in his place. The contests which commenced at this time, between the French and English colonists, had their origin in the efforts of the former to protect their monopoly of trade with the northern and western Indians, and to prevent its diversion from the channel of the *St. Lawrence* to *New York*.

**11. Diversion of Trade.**—In these commercial contests, can be traced the first imperceptible beginnings of that gradual transference of our trade, (and it has never since been fully restored) from its natural channel of the *St. Lawrence* to the *New York* seaboard. To the efforts made to restore it, which were begun nearly two centuries ago, may be attributed one of the primary causes which led to a retaliatory expedition from *Boston*, under *Phipps*, against the seat of French commerce at *Quebec*.

**12. Second Expedition to Quebec.**—In 1689, *Frontenac* was re-appointed governor; but the commercial disputes had already become so fierce, that the expedition from *Boston* against *Quebec* was determined upon by the *New York* and *New England* colonists. *Sir William Phipps*, with a fleet, and Governor *Winthrop*, with an army, were accordingly sent. *Winthrop* returned without accomplishing anything; but *Phipps* pushed on. After capturing some inferior posts on the *St. Lawrence*, *Sir William* reached *Quebec* in October, 1690. He was bravely repulsed by *Frontenac*, and compelled to return to *Boston*, with his shattered fleet, greatly mortified at his defeat.

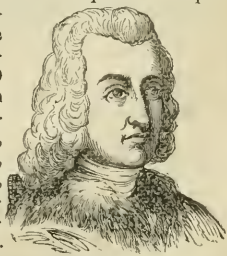
**13. Iroquois Inroads.**—From this period, until the treaty of *Utrecht*, in 1713,

wars arising out of these trading restrictions were unceasingly kept up between the rival colonies. The *Iroquois* were most active in their prosecution, and made many fierce and devastating inroads into *Canada*.

**14. Colonial Development.**—During the peace which followed, *De Vaudreuil* and *Beauharnois*, the able French Governors who succeeded *Frontenac*, were enabled, with but slight interruptions, to introduce various salutary reforms, and to strengthen the military resources of the Province. *Fort Niagara* was constructed; trade and population increased; contentment reigned, and agriculture flourished.

**15. Ebb and Flow of War.**—In 1745 the war spirit was again revived; but the treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, in 1748, allayed it for a time. In 1752, however, indications of a coming struggle were perceptible; but the defeat of *Braddock*, the English General, near *Fort du Quesne* (*Pittsburg*), *Pennsylvania*; the failure of the expeditions of 1755; the capture of *Oswego* by the *Marquis de Montcalm*, in 1756,—showed clearly that, without wiser counsels and more active measures, the result of the contest would be humiliating to the pride of *England* and her generals.

**16. Lord Chatham.**—At this crisis, the celebrated *William Pitt*, son of the *Earl of Chatham*, was called to power. Upon his promise of reimbursement, the American colonists raised 50,000 men. He then despatched General *Abercrombie*, with *Amherst*, *Wolfe*, *Boscawen*, and *Howe*, to conduct the next campaign in America. *Louisbourg* (*Cape*



WILLIAM PITT.

*Exercises.*—What is said of French exploration, colonial contests, diversion of trade, second expedition to *Quebec*, *Iroquois* inroads, colonial development, ebb and flow of war, and *Lord Chatham*?



Breton), Forts Frontenac and du Quesne, were soon afterwards captured; and in 1759, the final struggle was transferred, by Pitt's direction, to Quebec, the seat of French Imperial power in Canada.

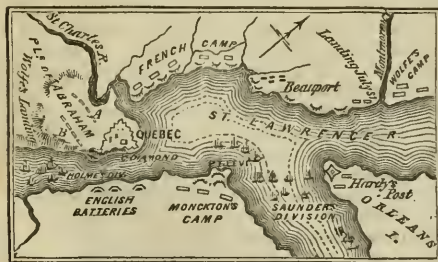
**17. Campaign of 1759.**—Pitt having reimbursed the colonies for the expenses incurred by them in the late campaign (amounting to \$1,000,000), they at once seconded his scheme for the conquest of Canada. Abercrombie was recalled; and to Amherst, Wolfe, and Prideaux was entrusted the campaign of 1759. Amherst captured Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on Lake Champlain; Prideaux was killed in his attempt upon Fort Niagara; but the garrison surrendered to Sir William Johnson, who succeeded him. Montreal still remained for Amherst; but to Wolfe was resigned the difficult task of reducing Quebec—the key to the possession of the Province.

**18. Capture of Quebec.**—Wolfe left Louisbourg, and arrived at the Island of Orleans, below Quebec, in June, 1759. He

but at length upon General Townshend's



WOLFE'S RAVINE.  
(Half way up the Heights.)



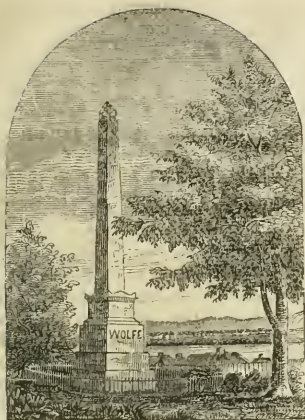
MILITARY OPERATIONS AT QUEBEC. 1759.

was accompanied by Admirals Holmes and Saunders, who took up the positions shown in the engraving. In July, Wolfe fixed his camp below the river Montmorency, and stationed General Monckton at Point Levy. For two months little was accomplished;

suggestion, Wolfe decided to scale the Heights of Abraham. Moving up the river with muffled oars, at midnight, on the 12th September, he silently landed, at what is now called Wolfe's Cove, and began the steep ascent. Slowly the soldiers emerged from that winding ravine, now so memorable in our annals; in the morning, 5,000 British troops were drawn up in battle array, upon the plains: having scaled a height of 300 feet above the river. What followed is well known. Wolfe achieved the victory; but the glory of that achievement was dimmed by the death of the two chivalrous chiefs—Wolfe and Montcalm. History has recorded their renown; and vanquished and victors, in their descendants, have generously united to erect a noble tribute to their memory, as shown in the engraving on the following page. (See also page 66.)

**19. Close of the Contest.**—With the

*Exercises.*—What were the preliminaries of the campaign of 1759? How was the capture of Quebec effected? Give the details, and describe the engravings. Point out Quebec on the map.



WOLFE AND MONTCALM'S MONUMENT.

fall of Quebec, fell, also, in Canada, that imperial power which, for more than 150 years had ruled the destinies of this Province. Quebec and Montreal soon capitulated, and thus brought the great contest between France and England, on this continent, to a close. The history of French rule is full of heroic achievements—of touching and memorable incidents; and its termination, though decisive, was still worthy of that great nation, whose history is parallel to our own in noble deeds and chivalrous renown.

**20. In the Treaty of Paris,** which followed the capture of Quebec, in 1763, the French language, laws, and institutions of the people, were guaranteed to the conquered colonists. In 1764, commenced—

**21. English Rule,**—and General Murray was appointed the first English governor of the Province of Quebec; in 1774 he was succeeded by Sir Guy Carleton (afterwards Lord Dorchester). In the same year, the Quebec bill was passed, re-

storing to the French Canadians that of which by Royal proclamation they had been unjustly deprived: the French civil laws, or *Coutume de Paris* (Custom of Paris). The criminal laws of England, trial by jury, and the Habeas Corpus Act, introduced shortly after the conquest, were, however, retained.

**22. American Revolution.**—The opposition to the famous Stamp Act, which passed the British parliament in 1765, reached so formidable a height in the New England colonies, in 1775, that blood was shed.

**23. Influence in Canada.**—In that year, these colonies requested the Canadians to send delegates to the Philadelphia Congress, in order to protest against the Stamp Act, and to take hostile steps against England, if necessary. Canada, having offered no objections to the Stamp Act, paid no attention to this request.

**24. American Invasion.**—The Americans, therefore, sought to wrest the Province from its recent conquerors. They dispatched a force of 2,000 men, under General Montgomery, up the river Richelieu, to take Montreal, and 1,100 men, under Colonel Arnold, up the Kennebec (from Maine), to join Montgomery, and capture Quebec. Montreal, Chambly, and St. Johns were taken by the American General; but at Quebec he was defeated, his force dispersed, and himself killed. In June, 1776, the Americans were expelled from the Province.

**25. United Empire Loyalists.**—In 1783, the estimated population of the Province of Quebec amounted to 130,000. About 10,000 of these were United Empire, (or American,) Loyalists, who, from principle, firm in their allegiance to the Sovereign, nobly abandoned their possessions, their homes and firesides, in the United States, that they might still enjoy, though as exiles, protection and freedom under the British flag. Their heroic fortitude, under unparalleled sufferings and privations, has

*Exercises.*—How was the contest closed? Describe the treaty. What followed? What is said of the American Revolution? How did it affect Canada? Who were the United Empire Loyalists?

rendered their memory dear to all Canadians; while the unrelenting severity of the acts of perpetual banishment and confiscation, passed by the several States which they had left, inflicted deep and unmerited wrongs which should never have followed the maintenance of conscientious principles equally sacred, if not more so, than those held by the conquerors. The generous amnesty of the time of Charles II. must ever remain in striking and chivalrous contrast with the refusal of the "thirteen free and independent States," to grant the same at the close of their successful revolution in 1776-83.

## 26. Settlement of Upper Canada.

—The western part of Canada having been chiefly settled by United Empire Loyalists, to whom the British Government had liberally granted land and subsistence for two years, it was deemed advisable to confer upon these settlers a distinct government, more in accordance with their national predilections. The tenure too by which land was held in both parts of the Province suggested a political division. To the east, the feudal tenure prevailed; to the west, that of free and common socage (freehold). In 1788, Lord Dorchester divided Upper Canada into four districts, viz.: Lunenburg, Mecklenburg, Nassau, and Hesse. In 1792, the Upper Canada legislature changed these names into Eastern, Midland, Home, and Western. These districts were afterwards increased to 20, but, in 1851, 42 counties were substituted for them. There are also 24 Legislative Council Electoral Divisions.

**27. Division of the Province.**—Under Pitt's auspices, the British parliament passed a measure, since known as the "Constitutional Act of 1791," dividing the Province of Quebec into Upper and Lower Canada. To each were granted a Legislative Council (appointed by the Crown), an elective House of Assembly, and an Execu-

tive Government, consisting of a Lieutenant Governor and a Cabinet Council.

**28. The First Upper Canada Parliament** was opened at Newark (Niagara) on the 17th September, 1792, by Lieut. Governor Simcoe. The House of Assembly consisted of only 16 members, and the Legislative Council of 7. Eight bills were passed; one of which provided for the introduction of the English Civil Law. Trial by Jury was also specially introduced, by statute, in that year. The English Criminal Law, though previously introduced into the entire province of Quebec, by Imperial statute, was (as it stood in 1792), by Provincial statute, made the law of the land in Upper Canada.

**29. The First Lower Canada Parliament** was opened at Quebec, December 17, 1792, by Lieut. Governor Clarke, in the absence of the Governor General, Lord Dorchester. The House of Assembly consisted of 50 members, and the Legislative Council of 15. Eight bills were passed. The revenue of the province amounted, in that year, to only \$25,000.

**30. Slavery Abolished.**—In 1793, slavery was abolished in Upper Canada; and, in 1803, Chief Justice Osgoode decided that it was also incompatible with the laws of Lower Canada.

**31. The Seat of Government in Upper Canada** was, in 1796, removed from Newark (Niagara), to York (Toronto). Toronto then contained only twelve houses.

**32. Declaration of War, in 1812.**—Little of special note occurred until 1812, when the Americans declared war against England. At that time Lower Canada contained an estimated population of 200,000, and Upper Canada, 80,000.

**33. Fort Michilimackinac Captured.**—On the 17th July, 1812, Captain Roberts, by direction of General Sir Isaac Brock, captured Fort Michilimackinac, at the entrance to Lake Michigan, in the United States.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the settlement of Upper Canada—the division of the Province—the first parliament in each section—laws passed—slavery—Toronto—and the war of 1812?



**34. Detroit Taken.**—The Americans having collected an invading army at Detroit, Colonel St. George met and repulsed them at Amherstburgh on the 20th of July. On the 5th of August, they were again driven back, and on the 16th, General Hull, and the entire army of 2,500 men, with the garrison at Detroit, surrendered to Brock.

**35. Battle of Queenston.**—Another invading army having collected opposite Queenston, General Brock hastened to repel it. On the 13th October, a battle was fought at Queenston, and the Americans were totally routed and driven over the heights. The gallant General Brock, and his aide-de-camp, Colonel McDonell, were amongst the slain. Upper Canada has twice erected a monument to their memory.

**36. The Campaign of 1812.**—Various other engagements followed on the Niagara and St. Lawrence frontiers: but the campaign of 1812, ended at all points in the discomfiture of the American invading armies. The spirit of the Canadian people was thoroughly roused; and “pro aris et focis” (for our altars and firesides), resounded throughout the country as the rallying watch-word of its defenders.

**37. Reverses and Successes.**—In 1813, Toronto and Fort St. George (at Niagara) were captured by the Americans; but Major McDonell gained important advantages at Ogdensburgh, and Genl. Proctor at Fort Oswego,—which, however, the failure of Prevost's attack on Sackett's Harbour counterbalanced. At Stony Creek and



NIAGARA FRONTIER.  
At Stony Creek and

Beaver Dams, on the Niagara frontier, the Canadian troops were victorious. Forts Schlosser and Black Rock were also successfully attacked. But the tide of victory turned; and the American success on Lake Erie was soon followed by the defeat of General Proctor and his brave Indian ally, Tecumseth, at Moravian town, river Thames. At Chrysler's Farm and Chateauguay river, however, the Americans were totally de-



FORT NIAGARA, 1813.

feated. Fort Niagara was also wrested from them by Colonel Murray. After the failure of their invading army at La Colle, they turned their attention to Upper Canada. The victory of the British at Oswego was followed by their defeat at Sackett's Harbour. Fort Erie was also lost; and at the battle of Chippewa, the brave General Riall was forced to retire to—

**38. Lundy's Lane,** where the defenders of Canada again successfully resisted the invaders. Here one of the most heroic and desperate engagements of the war took place. General Drummond and his men, for six hours, maintained the unequal fight, on an open plain, till midnight, against a force twice the strength of their own. The British held possession of the field, and in the morning the Americans had retreated to Chippewa, and thence to Fort Erie.

**39. Close of the War.**—Drummond now sought to retake Fort Erie and to capture Black Rock, but was unsuccessful. The failure, however, was more than compensated by the capture of Prairie du Chien, and the gallant defence of Fort Mackinac.

*Exercises.*—Trace the various events connected with the war of 1812. In what battles were the bravery of the Canadian troops conspicuous? Point out the places. How did the war terminate?



But on Lake Champlain, the British forces suffered defeat; though this disaster was soon retrieved by a decline of American naval power on Lake Erie, and their retirement from Fort Erie. The destruction of this fort was the last act in the bloody drama; and by the Treaty of Ghent, December 24th, 1814, peace was finally restored to the Province—its soil freed from the foot of the invader, and our laws and institutions still preserved to us by the blessing of Providence and the bravery of our defenders.

**40. Political Progress.**—War having ceased, the peaceful arts prevailed; and social, political, and commercial progress soon followed. Gradually the political questions of the day assumed an importance which rendered the annals of those times somewhat checkered. These questions related chiefly to the civil rights of various religious persuasions, to the powers of the House of Assembly, the clergy reserves, &c.

**41. Parliamentary Contests** both in Upper and Lower Canada was the result; and although conducted with vehemence and acrimony at times, these contests developed in many of the popular leaders that high order of talent and public virtue, which in after life has characterised them as a class.

**42. Colonial Rights.**—The contests to which we have referred, although mainly directed to the establishment of civil and religious freedom, involved the solution of that delicate question of colonial relations with the mother-country, based upon the maintenance of that connection which happily exists between Canada and Great Britain.

**43. The Reform Policy** for this purpose aimed at the substitution of a responsible cabinet for an irresponsible one, by making the heads of the government departments (who compose the cabinet) directly responsible to parliament for the acts of the Governor in council, and not to the

Governor alone, as the representative of Her Majesty, while the adherents of a—

**44. Conservative Policy** maintained, that so wide a departure from the principles upon which colonial governments were conducted, would be a novel and dangerous experiment, and might ultimately impair the connection with the mother-country, and jeopardise our rights as British colonial freemen.

**45. In their Administration** of the existing form of government, the latter party had the advantage in the contest; and in many cases may not have either wisely or judiciously exercised their powers. Unpleasant collisions followed as a natural consequence till at length things came to a—

**46. Crisis in 1837-8,** and an appeal to arms was made by the more ultra section of the former party. This attempt at civil war was speedily put down by the united efforts of the well-affected of the two great political parties.

**47. Lord Durham.**—In 1838, the Earl of Durham was despatched from England, to enquire into the causes of discontent in Canada, and to suggest a remedy. This he did with great ability, and in 1839 embodied the result of his investigations in an elaborate report to Her Majesty.

**48. Union of 1840.**—Lord Durham's views were, with slight modifications, adopted; and in 1840, a legislative union of the Province was effected by Imperial enactment, under the administration of Lord Sydenham, and a modified form of responsible government introduced.

**49. System of Compromise.**—Thus were the demands of one great party granted; while to meet the views of the other party, guards and checks were interposed, which since that time have been gradually relaxed.

**50. The Result** has been, that out of the strife and agitation of the past, "has

---

*Exercises.*—What followed the war? Describe the series of events which afterwards led to the union of Upper and Lower Canada, in 1850; the compromise.

grown the Canadian constitution,—that beautiful and graceful structure of which England, (and America too) may feel proud”—which, while it amply provides for Imperial control, secures to the Canadian people the fullest enjoyment of their rights and privileges as British subjects; and confers

upon them the inestimable advantages of British protection and support. And never, since the original settlement of the Province, were the people of Canada more loyal in their devotion to Her Most Gracious Majesty the Queen, than at the present time.

#### SOCIAL, CIVIL, AND COMMERCIAL PROGRESS OF LOWER CANADA.

**51. Latent Resources.**—During the first period after the conquest of Lower Canada, little progress was made. She had, however, within her own borders, the germ and elements of her future advancement; and in the activity of her sons, under the fostering care of a more popular form of government, she was enabled, when unchecked, to develop advantageously her wealth and resources.

**52. Early Enterprise.**—The basis for this development was laid at the time when the spirit of exploration and discovery, which so eminently characterised the early periods of French colonial government, was evoked, and nobly sustained by the zeal and heroism of Champlain, Joliette, Marquette, Bhamois, La Verandrye, La Salle, Frontenac, and Beauharnois. The navigation of the rivers, first explored by Champlain, has since been rendered complete, by the construction of the Chambly Canals: the course pursued by Joliette and La Salle is now the great highway of our commerce; while the example of the self-reliance and energy of Frontenac and his successors, is still felt where he and they so long maintained in the New World the honour and glory of France. La Verandrye, in the years 1642-1643, followed the course of the Saskatchewan, and reached the Rocky Mountains sixty years before Lewis and Clarke began their travels.

**53. Material Progress.**—Of public works, the most important in Lower Canada are the canals, railways, harbours, light-houses, and timber-slides. The annual value of her agricultural produce is now between forty and fifty millions of dollars.

**54. Interesting Facts.**—The first Roman Catholic mission in Lower Canada was established by the Recollets, in 1615; and before the end of the same year, one of the Recollet fathers, who had accompanied Champlain, began to preach to the Wyandots, near Matchedash Bay. The first Roman Catholic bishop (M. de Laval) was appointed in 1659-74; the first Protestant bishop (Dr. Jacob Mountain) in 1793; and the first regular Protestant Church service performed in Lower Canada, was in the Recollet Chapel, Quebec, kindly granted by Franciscan Friars. The *Quebec Gazette* (still in existence) was first published in 1764. Forty years ago there were but five newspapers published; now there are upwards of fifty. The Seminary of Quebec (now the Laval University) and Industrial Schools were founded by the munificence of Bishop Laval, in 1663.

**55. Recent Ameliorations.**—The Seigneurial Tenure has recently been abolished; municipal government introduced; and primary, collegiate, and university education placed within the reach of the entire population.

#### PROGRESS OF UPPER CANADA.

**56. French Posts.**—Lower Canada had already introduced civilization, and planted her trading posts on the upper lakes, when the Province was divided, and Upper Can-

---

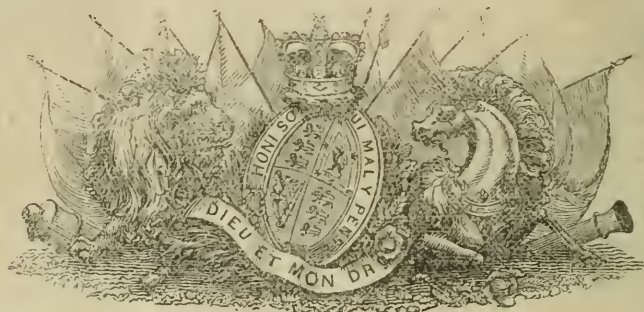
*Exercises.*—What was the result of the compromise? Give Lord Elgin's words. Mention the chief points in the social, civil, and commercial progress of Upper and Lower Canada.

ada settled by the loyalists from the United States, under Governor Simcoe.

**57. Public Improvements.**—Immediately after the removal of the seat of government from Newark to York, the energetic Simcoe constructed the great lines of road leading northward and westward from his infant capital. The Welland Canal was projected by the Hon. W. H. Merritt, in 1818-24; the Rideau Canal in 1826; and the Kingston Marine Railway in 1827. Other important works have since followed.

**58. Interesting Facts**—The first As-

essment Act was passed in 1793, and slavery abolished in the same year. Municipal institutions were introduced in 1841, and greatly enlarged and popularised in 1849. The Upper Canada Gazette was first published at Niagara, in 1793: now Upper Canada has one hundred and fifty newspapers. Legislative provision was first made for public education in 1807, but it was greatly increased in 1841; and in 1846-50, the foundation of the present admirable system of popular education was consolidated and enlarged.



## IX. FAMOUS CANADIAN BATTLE-GROUNDS, OR FORTIFIED POSTS.

**1. Quebec** was founded by Champlain in 1608; captured by Sir D. Kertk in 1629, restored in 1632; successfully defended by Count de Frontenac against Sir Wm. Phipps, in 1690; by the Marquis de Vaudreuil against Admiral Walker, in 1711; but was finally captured by the English forces under General Wolfe, in 1759. The Americans, under General Montgomery, were repulsed before its walls in 1775-6.

**2. Montreal** was founded in 1642: devastated by the Iroquois in 1689; capitulated to the English in 1760; taken by the

Americans under General Montgomery, in 1775, and restored in 1776, when the Americans were forced to retire from Canada.

**3. Isle-aux-Noix**, in the Richelieu river, commands the entrance to Lake Champlain; was fortified by the French in 1759; captured by the English in 1760; taken by the Americans in 1775 (from hence they issued their proclamation to the Canadians); and rendered important service in the war of 1812-14. (See illustration on page 30.)

**4. St. Johns**, Richelieu river, was fortified by the French under Montcalm, in

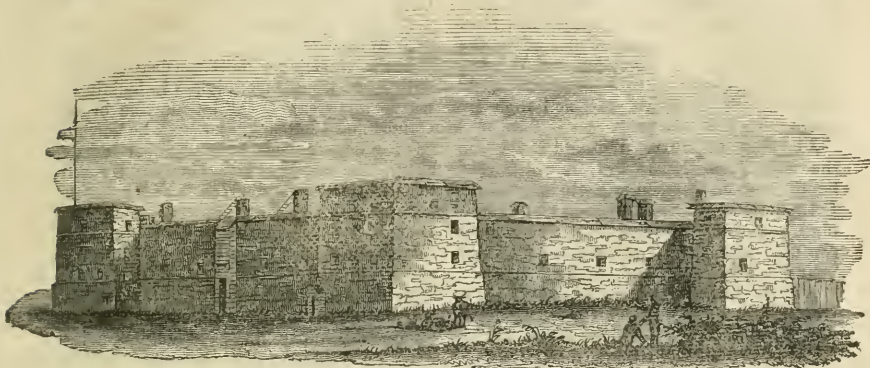
*Exercises.*—What are the interesting facts connected with the progress of Upper Canada? Give a sketch of the military events connected with the history of Quebec, Montreal, and Isle-aux-Noix.



1758; taken by the English; again fortified and enlarged by Sir Guy Carleton; captured by the Americans in 1775, and retained by them until they were forced to retire from Canada, in 1776. It was the point

of rendezvous for Burgoyne's army, previous to his ill-fated expedition, which terminated so disastrously at Saratoga, in 1777. (See the illustration on page 29.)

5. **Fort Chambly**, the third important



FORT CHAMBLY, RICHELIEU RIVER.

military post on the river Richelieu, 12 miles from St. Johns, was originally built of wood, by M. de Chambly, a retired captain of the regiment of Carignan-Salière. It was often attacked by the Iroquois; and was afterwards rebuilt of stone, as shown above. In 1775 it was captured by the Americans, but retaken in 1776. It is now a military station.

6. **The Cedres Rapids**, on the St. Lawrence river, 24 miles from Lachine, was occupied by the Americans, as a small fort, in 1776. It was taken by a detachment of the British army and 500 Indians under the celebrated Brant, without firing a gun. The Americans sent for its support were captured, after a severe struggle.

7. **Frontenac**, or Kingston. M. de Courcelles originated the design of building a fort here, as a barrier against the Indians;

but, being recalled, Count de Frontenac erected it in 1672. It was rebuilt with stone in 1678, by La Salle. In 1689, during the famous eruption into Canada of the Iroquois, it was abandoned by the French, and taken possession of for a short time by the Indians. In 1695 it was again rebuilt; and in 1758, captured by the English. It is fortified.

8. **Fort Niagara**.—This spot, though now beyond the boundaries of Canada, was enclosed by La Salle, in 1679, when on his way to the Mississippi. In 1725, the French erected a fort here, which, in 1759, was captured by Sir Wm. Johnson. The legends connected with the history of this fort, under French rule, are numerous. In the war of 1813, it was surprised and captured by the Canadians.—(See the illustration on page 56.)

9. **Queenston Heights**, Niagara River.

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the military events connected with the history of St. Johns and Fort Chambly, Richelieu river, the Cedres Rapids, and Forts Frontenac and Niagara.



Here on the 13th October, 1812, Sir Isaac Brock defeated the Americans, but fell in the battle. After his death, the invaders were driven over the heights. John Brant, an Indian chief, son of the celebrated Joseph Brant, led 100 warriors in this battle.

**10. Stoney Creek**, seven miles from Hamilton. On the 5th June, 1813, the American Generals, Chandler and Winder, were here captured in a successful night sortie, by Sir John Harvey, and their invading army driven back.

**11. Beaver Dams**, Welland River. On the 24th June, 1813 (Mrs. James Secord having walked thirteen miles to apprise the British officer of the expedition sent against him), a piquet of 50 men and 200 Indians captured, after hard fighting, 500 Americans including 50 cavalry and two field-pieces.

**12. At Chippewa**, on 5th July, 1814, Gen. Riall, with 2,400 troops, gave battle to 4,000 Americans. The British fought bravely, but were compelled to retreat to—

**13. Lundy's Lane** or Bridgewater, near Niagara Falls. Here on the 24th July, 1814, General Drummond encountered the American forces. The battle commenced at 6 p. m. and continued until 9. Both parties being reinforced, the strife was renewed. At midnight the enemy retired to Chippewa, leaving the British in possession of the field. The Americans lost 1,200 in killed, wounded, and prisoners; and the British 900, including General Riall, who was captured. The Generals on both sides were wounded. This was the hardest fought battle in the whole campaign.

**14. Chrystler's Farm**, Williamsburg, County Dundas, 11th November, 1813. The Americans, under Gen. Wilkinson, in their passage down the St. Lawrence to attack Montreal, being harrassed by the Canadian forces, resolved to land and disperse them. They were 2,000 strong, and the Canadians about 1,000. After two hours hard fighting

in an open field, the Americans were compelled to retire, with a loss of one general, and 350 killed and wounded, while the Canadian loss was only 200. Medals were granted to the victors in this battle by the British Government.

**15. Chateauguay**.—To effect a junction with Wilkinson's army, General Hampton on the 26th October, 1813, pushed forward, with 3,500 troops, from lake Champlain towards Montreal. At the junction of the Outard and Chateauguay rivers, he encountered 400 Canadians, under Colonel de Salaberry, who disputed his advance. By skilful management and great bravery on the part of the Canadian officers,—Viger and Doucet—the Americans were compelled to retreat towards Plattsburg. Wilkinson's army also retired; and thus ended this formidable invasion of Lower Canada. These two battles, so gallantly won by inferior numbers, terminated the campaign. Medals were awarded to the Canadian Militia, whose heroism and stratagem thus saved Montreal from attack.

**16. La Colle Mill**, eight miles from the head of Lake Champlain. Here on the 31st March, the campaign of 1814 was opened, with the attack by General Wilkinson and 5,000 American troops upon this post, garrisoned by only 500 men. With the aid of two gun-boats, and two sloops from the Isle-aux-Noix, the Americans were again defeated, and driven back to Plattsburg.

**17. Fort Erie**.—This fort, defended by only 170 men, was captured by the Americans, 4,000 strong, on the 3rd July, 1814. On the 15th August, General Drummond sought to retake it but failed. On the 17th September, the besieged made a sortie, but were driven back. The loss on each side was 600. On the 5th November, the Americans blew up the fort, and retired from Canada. It is now in ruins.

**18. Thames**.—After the capture of the

*Exercises*.—Sketch the battles of Queenston, Stoney Creek, Beaver Dams, Chippewa, Lundy's Lane, Chrystler's Farm, Chateauguay, La Colle Mill, Fort Erie, and the Thames.

British force on Lake Erie, General Proctor and Tecumseth, with 1,400 men, retreated from Amherstburg along the Thames river. At the Moravian village they were over-

taken by General Harrison, with an army of 3,000 Americans, and utterly defeated. Here the brave Tecumseth lost his life. (*For a sketch of his life, see pages 68, 69.*)

#### MILITARY AND MILITIA

**19. The various Military Stations** of the Province of Canada, are garrisoned by soldiers sent out and paid by the Imperial Government, and by the Royal Canadian Rifles, raised and maintained by Imperial authority. This regular force has been gradually reduced to 2,000 men. The mi-

#### FORCE IN CANADA, 1858.

litia force (both active and sedentary) has recently been put upon an efficient footing. It now consists of 12,565 officers, 271,000 men, 1,859 cavalry-horses, and 30 guns. The appearance of the militia is highly creditable to the Province. The Governor General is the Commander-in-Chief.

## X. BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES

OF PERSONS CONNECTED WITH THE HISTORY OF CANADA, &c.

(ARRANGED IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER.)

These sketches include notices of many men now living, whose past career is identified with our colonial history, or whose public acts have contributed, more or less, to our social, political, or commercial advancement. As such, their names deserve a place in this brief record.

**1. Columbus,** Christopher, a native of Genoa; born in 1436; went to sea in 1450; to Lisbon in 1670; to Iceland in 1477; to Spain in 1485; and to France in 1492, but



COLUMBUS.

was almost immediately recalled, and was despatched from Palos, on the river Tinto, in Spain, on the 3rd August, in quest of the New World, which, he had maintained, existed to the westward. On

the 11th October, 1492, he discovered one of the Bahama Islands. Thinking he had reached further India, he called the islands

"West India Islands," and the inhabitants "Indians,"—names which both have retained. He did not reach the continent until six years after John Cabot visited Newfoundland, Labrador, and Virginia. He died May 20, 1506, aged 70. His name he believed, indicated his destiny: "Christoferens" (Christopher) Christ bearer, or the Gospel-bearer, to the heathen, and "Columbo" (Columbus), a dove, or carrier-pigeon.

**2. J. Cabot** (John), a Venetian, but a resident in England; was commissioned by Henry VII. to conquer and settle unknown lands, and discover a north-west passage. He left Bristol in 1497; and on the 24th of June, reached the coast of Newfoundland, Labrador, and thence south to Virginia.

**3. S. Cabot** (Sebastian), son of the foregoing, and a more celebrated navigator, was born in England. He sailed with his father from Bristol, in 1498, and passed down the coast of America from latitude

*Exercises.*—What military and militia force has Canada? What biographical sketches are given? Give a sketch of the life and career of Columbus, and of John and Sebastian Cabot.

56° to latitude 36°. He made a second voyage in 1517, as far south as the Brazils. He died in 1557, aged 80. (See page 97.)

**4. Cortereal**, Gaspar, a Portuguese, was despatched from Lisbon by the King in 1500. He discovered Labrador and Greenland. (His father is said to have discovered Newfoundland, in 1463.) He left Lisbon in 1501, but was never heard of afterwards.

**5. Americus Vespucius**, a distinguished Florentine navigator and scholar; made four voyages to the New World, and having the



AMERICUS VESPUCCIUS.

year after the death of Columbus, written an eloquent account of them, in which he claimed the honor of having first reached the main land, the continent was named after him. He died in 1514.

**6. J. Verrazzani** (John), a Florentine navigator in the service of France. In 1524, he took possession of the coast from Carolina to Nova Scotia, and called it New France. Having given spirits to the natives at one place, they called it Man-na-hatan, or place of drunk



JOHN VERRAZZANI.

enness—afterwards contracted to Manhattan Island, now the site of the city of New York.

**7. Cartier**, Jacques, the discoverer of Canada, was born at St. Malo, in France, in 1500. He was despatched to the west, by Francis I., in 1534.

On the 20th April, he sailed from St. Malo, reached Newfoundland on the 10th May, the Bay of Chaleurs on the 9th July, and the coast of Gaspé on the 24th. He returned to France in August. He made



JACQUES CARTIER.

his second voyage in 1535; and on the festival of St. Laurent, in August, he reached the Gulf and river, which, in honor of the day he called the St. Lawrence. In September he reached Stadacona, the present site of Quebec, where Donnacona, an Algonquin chief, welcomed him; and in October he visited Hochelaga, three miles from the site of Montreal, where a chief of the Huron Indians welcomed him. He very soon afterwards returned to France, taking with him the chief Donnacona. In 1541, as second in command to M. de Roberval, he again visited Canada; but having met with many disasters, he returned to France, and died soon after.



CARTIER'S SHIP.

**8. Roberval**, Jean Francoise de la Roque, Sieur de, a native of Picardy, France, was appointed Viceroy of Canada in 1540, and sailed thence, from Rochelle, in 1542. He met Cartier (returning to France) at St.

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the life and career of Gaspar Cortereal, Americus Vespucius, John Verrazzani, Jacques Cartier, and Roberval. For what is each celebrated?



Johns, Newfoundland, in June. Having wintered at Cap Rouge, he, in June, 1543, explored the Saguenay. In making another voyage to Canada, in 1549, he, with his brave brother Achille and their fleet, were lost.

**9. Hudson,** Henry, was an eminent English navigator, but his early history is unknown. He was sent, in 1607, by some London merchants, to discover a north-west passage to China and Japan, but reached only 80° north latitude, and returned. In a second voyage he went as far as Nova Zembla. In 1609, he was despatched on a third voyage, by the Dutch East India Company (who called him Hendrick Hudson), and discovered the beautiful river Hudson, in the State of New York. In 1610, he undertook a fourth voyage, in a bark named the "Discovery," and in June reached Greenland. Proceeding along the Labrador coast, which he named Nova Britannia, in 60° north latitude he discovered a strait leading into the vast bay (both of which are now called after him.) He entered it, and went southwards. Unable to bear the severe climate, he prepared to return; but having threatened his mutinous crew, they entered his cabin at night, pinioned his arms, and put him, with his son John, and seven infirm men, on shore in a boat. They were never heard of afterwards. A few of the mutineers reached England, in 1611, after having justly suffered great hardships.

**10. Champlain,** Samuel de, a native of Brouage, France, explored the St. Lawrence, with Poulgrivé, from Tadoussac to Three Rivers, in 1603-7. On the 3rd July, 1608, he founded the City of Quebec. In 1609, he ascended the river Richelieu, and discovered Lake Champlain. In 1615, he ascended the Ottawa to Lake Nipissing; descended French River to Georgian Bay; and from Lake Simcoe he passed, by a long portage, to the head-waters of the river Trent, and thence to Lake Ontario. He then crossed to Oswego. He had many conflicts with the

Iroquois Indians. In 1629, his capital was captured by the English, under Sir David Kertk, but, in 1632, restored. In 1633, he was appointed the first Governor of Canada. He died in 1635, deeply regretted.

**11. Laval,** The Right Reverend François de Montmorency, was born at Laval, in France, in 1623. In his youth he was known as Abbé de Montigny, and in 1659, he came to Canada as Vicar Apostolic, with the title of Bishop of Pétrée; in 1674, he was named first Roman Catholic Bishop of Quebec. He founded and endowed the Quebec Seminary, in 1663 (which, in 1852, became, by Royal charter, the Laval University.) He also established an industrial school and model farm, at St. Joachim, below Quebec. He made great efforts to prevent drunkenness among the Indians; and by his influence at Court, had the administration of government transferred from a viceroy to a superior council, under certain wise restrictions, which he had submitted to Louis XIV. He effected great good in the colony, and died at Quebec, 6th May, 1708, aged 85 years.

**12. Perrot,** Nicholas, a French traveller, was sent by M. Talon (Intendant of Canada) in 1671, to induce the north-western Indians to acknowledge the sovereignty of France. An island, situated at the western junction of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence, is called after him. He left a most interesting manuscript on the customs of the Indians.

**13. Frontenac,** Louis de Buade, Count de, a native of France, and Governor of Canada in 1672, was recalled in 1682. In 1672, he built Fort Frontenac (Kingston). It was rebuilt of stone by La Salle, in 1678. Frontenac was reappointed Governor in 1689, and carried on a vigorous war against the English settlements in New York, and against their Indian allies, the Iroquois. The English retaliated, and the Iroquois made various successful inroads into Canada. In 1690, Frontenac defeated Sir William

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the life and career of Henry Hudson, Samuel de Champlain; of the first Roman Catholic Bishop of Lower Canada; of Nicholas Perrot, and Count de Frontenac.



Phipps and the English fleet, before Quebec. He died in 1698, aged 78 years. Though haughty, he was an enterprising man.

**14. Jollette**, Louis, was born at Quebec in 1645; pursued his classical studies at the Jesuits' College there, and while preparing for the priesthood in the seminary, he determined to explore the western parts of New France. He gave up the study of divinity for that of the Indian languages. In 1673, he was chosen by Frontenac and Talon, the Intendant, to explore the Mississippi to its source. He chose Father Marquette to accompany him, and proceeded down the great river as far as the mouth of the Arkansas tributary. When near Montreal, on his return, his canoe upset in the Lachine rapids and his manuscripts were lost. As a reward for his services, he received a grant of the Island of Anticosti, and was named hydrographer to the king. He died about 1701, on the Island of Anticosti. A county in Lower Canada is named after him.

**15. Marquette**, James, a Jesuit missionary, was born at Picardy, in France. While a missionary at Lapoint, on Lake Superior, he expressed a desire to preach the gospel to the southern Indians, and was chosen by Jollette to accompany him on his expedition to the Mississippi. He remained in the north-west, with the Miami Indians, and died soon after his return from the exploration, aged 38 years. His narrative of the discovery has been published.

**16. Hennepin**, Louis, a French missionary, was born in 1640, and emigrated to Canada in 1675. He accompanied La Salle in his exploration of the Mississippi, in 1678, and visited the Falls of Niagara, — of which he wrote an interesting account.

**17. La Salle**, Robert Cavalier Sieur de, was ennobled by Louis XIV. He sought to reach China by way of Canada, and set out on an expedition for that purpose. His design was frustrated by an accident at a

place since called Lachine, or China. He explored the Mississippi from its source to its mouth, in 1678-80; spent two years between Frontenac (Kingston) and Lake Erie; and constructed the first vessel on Lake Erie (near Cayuga Creek). He sought to reach the Mississippi by sea, but having failed, he sought to reach it overland. In doing so, he was murdered by his followers.

**18. Iberville**, Pierre Le Moynes d', was born at Montreal, and was one of the best naval officers of France, under Louis XIV. He was successful in several encounters with the English in Hudson's Bay—(see page 106)—and in Newfoundland; in 1699, he laid the foundation of a colony at Biloxi, and having discovered the entrance to the Mississippi, which La Salle had missed, he sailed up that river to a considerable distance. He is considered as the founder of the colony of Louisiana. He died in 1706. His brother, Le Moynes de Bienville, was governor of Louisiana, and founded the city of New Orleans. The county of Iberville, in Lower Canada, is named after him.

**19. Montcalm**, Louis Joseph de, (Marquis of St. Veran), a distinguished French general, was born at Condiac, in France, in



MONTCALM.

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the life and career of Louis Jollette, James Marquette, Louis Hennepin, Sieur de la Salle, Iberville, and General Montcalm, and his death at the battle of Quebec.

1712. He distinguished himself at the battle of Placenza; and, in 1756, was made a Field Marshal. Having succeeded General Dieskau, in Canada, he took Oswego from the English in that year, and Fort William Henry (Lake George), in 1757; but was defeated by General Wolfe, on the Plains of Abraham, 13th September, 1759. In the battle, he received a mortal wound, and died on the morning of the 14th, aged 47. He was buried at the Ursuline Convent, Quebec. A noble and chivalrous soldier, he was regretted by friend and foe. A monument to the memory of himself and Wolfe was erected, by subscription, at Quebec, in 1827, by the Earl of Dalhousie, then Governor General. (*See pages 53, 54.*)

**20. Wolfe, James**, an English General, was born at Westerham, Kent, in 1726. He distinguished himself at the battle of Fontenay; and, in 1757, was despatched by



WOLFE.

Pitt to aid in the conquest of New France. In conjunction with Boscawen and Amherst, he took Cape Breton and Prince Edward Island, in 1758; and in 1759 he was entrusted with an expedition against Canada. He reached the Island of Orleans in June. On the 12th September, he scaled the Heights of Abraham, with 5,000 men, and

next day gave battle to Montcalm. While leading on his men to victory, he fell mortally wounded, and, in the moment of victory, expired, aged 32 years. His body was conveyed to England, and buried at Greenwich. A monument was erected to his memory in Westminster Abbey, and



WOLFE'S MONUMENT, QUEBEC.

another at Quebec, as above, (which has been replaced by a better), on the celebrated plains where "Wolfe died victorious."

**21. Pontiac** was a celebrated chief of the Ottawa tribe of Indians, who, removing from the valley of the great river of that name, settled near Michilimackinac. An ally of the French, he resisted the efforts of the English to gain possession of their forts, after the fall of Quebec, in 1759-60. In June, 1763, he matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the extinction of English power, by the simultaneous capture of the extensive chain of forts reaching from Lake Michigan to the Niagara. (*See page 47.*) Nine forts were attacked on the same day, and their garrison either massacred or dispersed. Detroit was besieged by Pontiac himself; but the attack failed, an Indian woman having discovered the plot. The siege was nevertheless maintained for nearly twelve months, until the garrison was re-

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the life and career of General Wolfe, his death at the battle of Quebec. What monuments were erected to the two heroes? What is said of Pontiac?

lieved by Colonel Bradstreet. Niagara was not attacked, and Pittsburg was saved by Colonel Bouquet. Pontiac afterwards professed friendship for the English; but an Indian spy having discovered, in a speech, symptoms of treachery, stabbed him to the heart, and fled. His loss was greatly deplored; for he was a man of singular sagacity, daring courage, and statesmanlike views. The county of Pontiac, in Lower Canada, is called after this renowned chief.

**22. Brant,** Joseph (Thayendanege), a Mohawk Indian, of pure blood, was born on the banks of the Ohio, in 1742. In the revolutionary war of 1776, he became the ally of the English; and, as a prominent chief among the Iroquois, he influenced several cantons of that celebrated league to join the English standard. During the war, he was chiefly engaged on the border settlements of New York and Pennsylvania, in conjunction with Sir William Johnson and

Colonel Butler. He received a good education in Connecticut; and during the war, held a colonel's commission from the King. At the close of the revolution, he removed to Canada, with the Mohawks, and obtained from Governor Haldimand the grant of a territory on the Grand River, six miles in width, from its source to its mouth. The town of Brantford, or Brant's ford, on the river, was named after him; as was also the county of Brant, in the same locality, and the township of Thayendanege on the Bay of Quinté, where a number of the Mohawks had settled. He translated the whole of the Gospel of St. Mark into the Mohawk language; and in many ways exerted himself to promote the temporal and spiritual welfare of his people. He was greatly respected and beloved by them and by the English. He visited England in 1783; and died near Wellington Square, Upper Canada, on November 24, 1807, aged 65 years. His remains were removed to the Mohawk village, Grand River, and interred by the side of the church which he had erected there. His son John led the Mohawks at the victorious battle of Queenston, in October, 1812. He was a noble specimen of a Christian Indian, and did much to alleviate the horrors of Indian warfare.

**23. Johnson,** Sir William, born in Ireland, in 1714, came to America in 1734 to manage the lands of his uncle (Sir P. Warren) on the Mohawk, and was agent of the British Government in its transactions with the Six Nation Indians, in the old French war. He was the friend of Brant; acquired great influence over and was greatly



JOSEPH BRANT.



SIR WM. JOHNSON.

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the life and career of Joseph Brant, a celebrated chief of the Mohawk tribe of Indians; also sketch the life and career of Sir William Johnson.



beloved by the Indians. For his defeat of General Dieskau, at Lake George, in 1755, he was knighted. In 1759, he took Fort Niagara; was made a baronet, and died in the Mohawk valley, in 1774, aged 60 years.

*Graves Simcoe*

**24. Simcoe**, John Graves, Colonel, born in England, in 1752. He entered the army at 19, and commanded the Queen's Rangers (Hussars) during the American revolutionary war. In 1792, he was appointed Lieutenant Governor of Upper Canada; and in September of that year, he opened the first Parliament of the Province, at the town of Niagara, then called Newark. In 1796, he removed the seat of Government to Toronto, then called York. He induced many of the United Empire Loyalists to settle in Upper Canada, and sought in every way to promote the prosperity of the Province. He constructed Yonge Street as a military road to the lake which now bears his name. He was appointed governor of St. Domingo in 1796, and a Lieutenant General in 1798. He died on his return to England, in 1806, aged 54 years.

**25. Macdonell**, The Right Reverend Alexander, D. D., first Roman Catholic Bishop of Upper Canada. He was born in 1762, ordained priest in 1794; was chaplain, in Ireland, to the Glengarry Fencibles, Scotch Militia (who were sent over to Ireland to quell the rebellion,) in 1798. For many years, an active missionary in various parts of Upper Canada, he was named by the Pope, Bishop of Rhœsina, and auxiliary Bishop of Upper Canada, January 12, 1819; consecrated at Quebec, December 31, 1820, and named Bishop of Kingston in 1826; died in the north of Ireland, in 1840, but was buried in the family vault, county of

Glengarry, Upper Canada. Bishop Gaulin (who died in May, 1857) was appointed his coadjutor, in 1833. Bishop Macdonell was an influential and able man, and was the first Canadian Roman Catholic Bishop who spoke the English language. Bishop Horan succeeds Bishop Gaulin, (1858.)

**26. Brock**, Major General Sir Isaac, "the Hero of Upper Canada," was born in the Island of Guernsey, in 1770. He served under Lord Nelson, at Copenhagen. In 1811, he held the office of President of Upper Canada during the absence of Governor Gore in England. On the 16th August, 1812, he made an attack on Detroit, and caused the American General, Hull, to surrender, with 2,500 men. On the 13th October, he defeated the Americans on the heights of Queenston, but fell early in the action, while gallantly leading his men, aged 42. Upper Canada has twice raised a monument to his memory, upon the scene of his victory.

**27. Tecumseth** (or Tecumthé,) a noted chief of the Shawanee Indians, was born in 1770. His brother was the celebrated "Prophet" of that tribe. In the American war of 1812, he was the warm friend and ally of the English. Although opposed to the civilization of the Indians, he adopted, in some measure, the habits of the whites, and held the rank of Indian Brigadier in the British army. He, with the western tribes of Indians, had been involved in hostilities with the United States, in 1811; and when war with Great Britain was declared, in 1812, Tecumseth and his warriors co-operated with the British forces. On the 5th October, while retreating from Detroit with General Proctor, the Americans overtook them at Moravian Town (river Thames,) and a battle ensued. The allied forces were defeated, and the brave Tecumseth fell in the midst of the fight, aged 44 years. He was a noble-looking Indian, and a man of inflexible principle—honorable and humane.

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the life and career of Colonel John Graves Simcoe; of the first Roman Catholic Bishop of Upper Canada: Major General Brock; and the Indian chief Tecumseth.



**28. Mountain,** The Right Reverend Jacob, D.D., was born in England, in 1751; consecrated first Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Quebec, in July, 1793, and continued

in that office for 32 years. He died on the 16th June, 1825, aged 75 years. As a laborious and an excellent man, he was greatly esteemed.

*(The remaining notices are not placed in chronological order. They refer to cotemporaries whose names are associated with the advancement of Canada.)*

**29. Strachan,** The Right Reverend John, D.D., first Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Toronto, was born in Aberdeen, Scotland, on the 12th April, 1778. He commenced life as a teacher; and opened the first grammar school in the Province at Kingston, and subsequently one at Cornwall. Among his pupils (in Scotland) were Sir David Wilkie and (in Upper Canada) the Chief Justice, Sir J. B. Robinson, ex-Chief Justice, Sir J. B. Macaulay, &c. He first officiated as a clergyman at Toronto in 1812; was appointed legislative councillor in 1818; archdeacon of York in 1825; and Bishop of Toronto in 1839.

**30. Papineau,** The Honorable Louis Joseph, a native of Lower Canada; born in 1789. He was elected an M.P., in 1809, and chosen speaker in January, 1817; he was the eloquent leader of his countrymen in the political struggles which preceded the outbreak of 1837. In that year he was exiled from the Province. After his return he occupied a seat in the united parliament, but has now retired from public life.

**31. MacNab,** The Honorable Sir Allan Napier, was born at Niagara in 1798. He was an officer in the navy and afterwards in the army in the war of 1812. After the war, he was a prominent politician, and in 1829, was elected an M.P. He was twice Speaker of the House of Assembly. In 1837, he was appointed military chief of the Upper Canada loyalists, in suppressing the insurrection. For his services he was knighted in 1838. He projected the Great Western Railway; was appointed Premier of Canada in 1855, and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom in 1856.

**32. Durham,** The Right Honorable John George Lambton, Earl of, was appointed Her Majesty's Lord High Commissioner to Canada, in May, 1838, to inquire into its political grievances. His report upon the political state of the Provinces (which ultimately led to the union of the Canadas, and the introduction of parliamentary, or responsible government into British America) was published in 1839. He died in 1840.

**33. Sydenham,** The Right Honorable Charles Poulett Thompson, Baron, was born in England in 1799; M.P. in 1826; Vice-President of the Board of Trade in 1830; President in 1834; and established the English Schools of Design in 1837. He was appointed Governor General of Canada in 1839; united the Canadas, and was created Baron Sydenham and Toronto, in 1840; opened the first united Parliament at Kingston, in June, 1841; established a municipal system in Upper Canada in August, and died and was buried in Kingston, in September, 1841, aged 42 years.

**34. Robinson,** The Honorable Sir John Beverly, was born in 1791; for many years an M.P., and Attorney General of Upper Canada; appointed Chief Justice of Upper Canada in 1829; created for distinguished civil services, a Civil Companion of the Order of the Bath, in 1850; and a Baronet of the United Kingdom in 1854.

**35. Lafontaine,** The Honorable Sir Louis Hypolite, was born in Boucherville, Lower Canada, 1807. For many years he was an M.P., and a distinguished political leader in Lower Canada. He was appointed Attorney General and Premier of

*Exercises.*—Give a sketch of the first Protestant Bishop of Lower and the first Protestant Bishop of Upper Canada. Hon. L. J. Papineau, Sir A. N. MacNab, Lord Durham, Lord Sydenham, &c. &c.

Canada in 1849; appointed Chief Justice of Lower Canada in 1853, and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom, in 1854.

**36. Baldwin,** The Honorable Robert, C. B., was a son of the late Hon. Dr. Baldwin. For a length of time Mr. Baldwin was a prominent leader of the liberal party in Upper Canada. He was an M. P., Attorney General, and Premier of Canada, and was, in 1854, created a Civil Commander of the Bath, for distinguished public services. Died 1858.

**37. Bidwell,** the Honorable Marshall Spring, was born in Massachusetts, before the treaty of 1783, and settled at Bath, Upper Canada, in 1811. He was elected an M. P. in 1824, and was twice speaker of the Assembly. The Colonial Secretary, in 1837, directed Sir F. B. Head, the Governor of Upper Canada, to elevate him to the bench, which Sir Francis refused to do. Mr. Bidwell retired from the Province in 1837, and is now a member of the New York Bar. Sir Francis left Canada in 1838.

**38. Ryerson,** The Reverend Egerton, D. D., is son of the late Colonel Joseph Ryerson (a United Empire Loyalist, of New Jersey, who came from New Brunswick, in 1793). He was born in Charlotteville, County of Norfolk, Upper Canada, in 1803; entered the Wesleyan ministry in 1825; was editor of the *Christian Guardian* (which he established) in 1829; Principal of Victoria College (Cobourg) in 1841; appointed Chief Superintendent of Education for Upper Canada in 1844; made a tour of inquiry in Europe in 1844-5; and founded the present admirable system of public instruction in Upper Canada in 1846-50.

**39. Elgin,** The Right Honorable James, Earl of. Born in London in 1811; was M. P. in 1841; Governor General of Jamaica from 1842 to 1846; of Canada, from 1847 to 1854; laid the corner-stone of the Upper Canada Normal School, in 1851, and was an enlightened friend of education; he effected

a treaty of commercial reciprocity with the United States, in 1855; and was appointed envoy extraordinary to China in 1857, and Imperial Post Master General in 1859.

**40. Hincks,** The Honorable Francis. Fifth and youngest son of the late Rev. Dr. Hincks, of Belfast, Ireland. He established the *Toronto Examiner* newspaper, in 1839, and the *Montreal Pilot* in 1844. He was an M. P.: Inspector General of public Accounts and Premier of Canada; projected the Grand Trunk Railway; and was appointed Governor-in-Chief of the Windward Islands in 1855. The seat of his government is Bridgetown, Barbadoes (*See p. 111.*)

**41. Logan,** Sir Wm. E., F.R.S., a native of Montreal, was appointed chief of the Geological Survey of Canada, in 1842. His valuable scientific labors, and his interesting collection of Canadian geological specimens at the Great Exhibitions of 1851 and 1855, merited the attention of the Queen and the Emperor of the French. He was knighted by the Queen; received a gold medal of the highest class, and decoration of the Legion of Honor from the Emperor; also the Wollaston Gold Medal of 1855, from the Geological Society of London.

**42. Tache,** The Honorable Sir Etienne Paschal, was born at Montmagny, L. C., in 1795, where he afterwards practised as a physician. As an officer he distinguished himself at the battle of Plattsburg, in the war of 1812. He became an M. P. in 1841, but was afterwards called to the Legislative Council; was appointed Adjutant General of Militia in 1846; Commissioner of Public Works in 1848; Receiver General in 1849, Speaker of the Council and Premier in 1856, and Commissioner of Crown Lands in 1857.

**43. Jones,** The Reverend Peter (Kakke-wa-quon-a-by), an Ojibway Indian Chief, was born at the River Credit, Upper Canada, in 1802. In 1826 he became a Wesleyan Minister. He died at Brantford in 1856.

*Exercises.*—Sketch the life and career of the Hon. R. Baldwin, the Hon. S. Bidwell, the Rev. Dr. Ryerson, Lord Elgin, the Hon. Francis Hincks, Sir W. E. Logan, Hon. E. Taché, and Rev. P. Jones.

## GOVERNORS OF CANADA.

1. *New France.*

Jean François de la Roche, Sieur de Roberval, First Viceroy, with commission to explore	1540
Marquis de la Roche, ditto	1598

2. *Canada—Royal Government Established.*

Samuel de Champlain (Viceroy)	1612
Marc Antoine de Bras de Fer de Châteaufort	1635
Charles Henault de Montmaguy	1636
Louis D'Ailleboul de Coulouge	1648 and 1657
Jean de Lauson	1651
Charles de Lauson	1656
Pierre de Voyer d'Argenson	1658
Pierre du Bois d'Avangour	1661
Augustin de Saffray Mécy	1663
Sieur de Courcelles	1665
Comte de Frontenac	1672 and 1689
Sieur de la Barre	1682
Marquis de Denonville	1685
Chevalier de Callières	1699
Marquis de Vaudreuil	1703
Marquis de Beauharnois	1726
Comte de la Galissonnière	1747
Sieur de le Jonquière	1749
Marquis du Quesne de Menneville	1752
Sieur de Vaudreuil de Cavagnal	1755

3. *Province of Quebec.*

General James Murray (Governor General)	1763
Hon. Paulus E. Irving (President)	1766
General Sir Guy Carleton (Lord Dorchester) (Governor General)	1766, 1774, 1776, and 1793
Hon. Hector T. Cramahé (President)	1770
Hon. Frederick Haldimand	1773
Hon. Henry Hamilton (Lieut. Gov.)	1774
Hon. Henry Hope	1775

4. *Lower Canada.*

Colonel Clarke (Lieutenant Governor)	1791
Hon. Robert Prescott	1796
Sir R. S. Milnes	1799
Hon. Thomas Dunn (President)	1805 and 1811
Sir J. H. Craig	1807
Sir George Prévost	1811

## Lower Canada—(continued.)

Sir G. Drummond (Administrator)	1815
Hon. John Wilson (Administrator)	1816
Sir J. C. Sherbrooke	1816
Duke of Richmond	1818
Hon. James Monk (President)	1819
Sir Peregrine Maitland	1820
Earl Dalhousie	1820 and 1825
Sir F. N. Burton (Lieutenant Governor)	1824
Sir James Kempt (Administrator)	1828
Lord Aylmer (Administrator)	1830
Earl of Gosford	1835
Sir J. Colborne (Lord Seaton) (Adm.)	1838
Earl of Durham	1838
C. Poulett Thompson (Lord Sydenham)	1839

5. *Upper Canada.*

Colonel J. G. Simcoe (Lieutenant Governor)	1792
Hon. Peter Russell (President)	1796
General Peter Hunter	1799
Hon. Alexander Grant (President)	1805
Hon. Francis Gore	1806 and 1815
Sir Isaac Brock (President)	1811
Sir R. Hale Sheaffe (President)	1812
Baron F. de Rottemburg (President)	1813
Sir Gordon Drummond	1813
Sir George Murray	1815
Sir Frederick P. Robinson	1815
Hon. Samuel Smith (Adm.)	1817 and 1820
Sir Peregrine Maitland	1818 and 1820
Sir John Colborne (Lord Seaton)	1828
Sir Francis B. Head	1836
Sir George Arthur	1838

6. *Province of Canada.*

Baron Sydenham and Toronto (Governor General)	1841
Gen. Sir R. Jackson (Administrator)	1841
Sir Charles Bagot	1842
Sir Charles (Baron) Metcalfe	1843
Earl Cathcart	1845
Earl of Elgin and Kincardine	1847
Sir Edmund W. Head	1854 and 1857
General Sir William Eyre (Administrator)	1857

## XI. NOVA SCOTIA, INCLUDING CAPE BRETON.

1. **Rank and Situation.**—Nova Scotia, the second in importance and population of the British North American Colonies, is situated to the S. E. of New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island. Including Cape Breton, it lies between North latitude  $43^{\circ} 26'$  and  $45^{\circ} 55'$ , and West longitude from Greenwich  $59^{\circ} 45'$  and  $66^{\circ} 30'$ . Its area is 18,746 square miles, or about 12,000,000 acres, and its population about 286,000.

*Exercises.*—Who were the Governors of New France, Canada, Province of Quebec, Lower Canada, Upper Canada, and the Province of Canada, until 1858. Where is the Province of Nova Scotia?

**2. The Province** of Nova Scotia is naturally divided into two parts : the Peninsula of Nova Scotia and the Island of Cape Breton. They are now united, however, under one government and legislature.

#### PENINSULA OF NOVA SCOTIA.

**3. Boundaries, Size, &c.**—The peninsula of Nova Scotia is bounded on the N. by the Bay of Fundy, Northumberland Strait, St George's Bay, and the Strait of Canseau ; on the E. and S. by the Atlantic

Ocean, and on the W. by the Atlantic Ocean, Bay of Fundy, Chigeg-nec-to Bay and New Brunswick. Its greatest length is 280 miles ; breadth, 120 ; and its area 15,627 square miles. Its population is about 227,500.

#### ISLAND OF CAPE BRETON.

**4. Boundaries, Size, &c.**—The island of Cape Breton is situated to the north-east of Nova Scotia, and bounded on the north by the Gulf of St. Lawrence ; east, by the Atlantic Ocean ; south, by Nova Scotia and the Atlantic Ocean ; and west, by Northum-

berland Strait and the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is 100 miles long, 85 wide, and 275 in circumference. Its area is 3,120 square miles, or about 2,000,000 acres ; and its population 58,500. It was called Breton by the French.

#### PHYSICAL FEATURES OF THE

**5. Shape and Surface.**—The Nova Scotia peninsula is somewhat triangular in shape, and is connected with New Brunswick by a short isthmus 16 miles in width. Its surface is undulating and picturesque. The south coast is in many parts rugged and broken, but not elevated. In the interior are several ranges of hills of no great elevation. The Cobequid, which are the most important, attain the height of 1,200 feet. The capes, bays, and harbours are numerous. On the South-east coast there are twenty-six harbours, twelve of them deep enough for ships of the line.

**6. Surface, &c.**—Cape Breton Island is nearly severed in two by the Bras d'Or Lake. From the head of the lake to the Strait of Canseau, the portage, now overcome by a canal, is only a quarter of a mile. The island is rich in minerals, and is well wooded and fertile. The surface is undulating, and the scenery very beautiful.

**7. Capes.**—In *Nova Scotia*, the principal are St. George, Canseau, Sambro', Sable, Digby Neck, Chigeg-necto, and Split Capes.

#### PROVINCE OF NOVA SCOTIA.

In *Cape Breton*: St. Lawrence, North, Egmont, Enfundé, Dauphin, Murgain, Breton, and Mabou Capes.

**8. Bays.**—*Nova Scotia* is noted for its numerous bays. The principal on the northern coast are Fundy, Minas, Chigeg-necto, Verte, and St. George's ; on the eastern, Ched-a-buc-to ; on the southern, Margaret's, Chebucto or Halifax, and Mahone ; on the western, St. Mary's. In *Cape Breton* the chief are Bras d'Or (lake), Aspy, Sydney, St. Ann's, Miré, Gabarus, and St. Peter's.

**9. Fundy.**—This is the great bay of Nova Scotia, and, with its minor divisions, separates it from New Brunswick. It is remarkable for its high tides, fogs, and storms. It is an arm of the sea, 170 miles long, and from 30 to 60 wide. The rivers St. John and St. Croix flow into it from the north ; and the Annapolis, and several other rivers, from the southern, or Nova Scotia side. Its upper extremity is divided into Chigeg-necto Bay and Cumberland Basin, to the north ; and Minas Channel and Basin and Co-bequid Bay, to the south.

*Exercises.*—How is Nova Scotia divided, and what are its boundaries, size, and population ? Give the boundaries and size of Cape Breton ; and the physical features of the Province of Nova Scotia.



**10. Straits.**—Cumberland Strait separates Nova Scotia from Prince Edward Island; and Canseau Strait separates it from Cape Breton.

**11. Rivers** are numerous in *Nova Scotia*. The principal are the Annapolis, the East River of Pictou, Shubenacadie, St. Mary's, Lahave, and Liverpool. In *Cape Breton*, Miré to the east, Inhabitants to the south, and Margarie to the west.

**12. Lakes.**—*Nova Scotia* is dotted over with many beautiful lakes. The principal are the Rosignol (30 miles long), Ship Harbour, Grand, and Lochaber Lakes. In *Cape Breton*, Bras d'Or and Margarie. The Bras d'Or is a fine salt-water inlet 20 miles wide,

running nearly the whole length of the island.

**13. Islands.**—The principal, off *Nova Scotia* are Haut, Long, Brier, Cape Sable, Seal, and Mud Islands on the Bay of Fundy and Atlantic coasts; Pictou and Caribou on the north; and numerous small ones on the south. Near *Cape Breton* are Boulardare, Scatarie, Madame, Janvrin, and Sea Wolf. Boulardare Island is situated at the entrance to Bras d'Or Lake. Sable Island, 87 miles south east of Canseau, is 25 miles long, and from one to two wide. It is noted for its sandy coast and numerous shipwrecks. A light-house, with men to aid shipwrecked mariners, is maintained on the island.

#### THE CLIMATE AND GEOLOGY OF NOVA SCOTIA, INCLUDING CAPE BRETON.

**14. Climate.**—Nova Scotia, being in nearly the same latitude as Canada, has a climate somewhat similar to it. Within the influence of the Mexican gulf-stream, and being nearly surrounded by water, the climate of Nova Scotia is more equable, and less liable to the extremes of heat and cold than Canada. Halifax harbour is very rarely closed in winter. The autumn is an agreeable period of the year.

**15. The Gulf-Stream** is, as Lieutenant Maury observes, a great "*river in the ocean*." Its Banks and its bottom are of cold water, while its current is of warm. The Gulf of Mexico is its fountain, and its mouth is the Arctic Seas. . . . Its waters as far as the Carolina coasts, are of indigo blue." Escaping from the Gulf of Mexico, its course is first through the narrow outlet between Florida and the Island of Cuba; then along the United States coast as far as Cape Cod; diverging here, it first strikes the southern point of Nova Scotia, then that of Newfoundland, where, on the Grand Bank, it meets the Arctic current from Baffin's Bay. The unequal temperatures of the two great currents of water which meet here, cause the perpetual fogs on the coast. Passing the Banks, its course is eastward till it meets the British Isles. "By these it is divided—one part going into the Polar basin of Spitzbergen, the other entering the Bay of Biscay, conveying heat and softness to these shores." The influence of this stream makes Ireland the Emerald Isle, and clothes the shores of England with verdure; while in the same latitude on this continent, the coast of Labrador is fast bound in fetters of ice. Its comparative velocity and temperature are as follows:—Off the narrow channel of Bemini, the velocity is 4 miles an hour; off Cape Hatteras, where it is 75 miles wide, the rate is reduced to 3 miles; on the banks of Newfoundland to 1½; its

force then gradually abates as it progresses eastward. The highest temperature of the stream is 85° Fahr. Between Cape Hatteras and Newfoundland the temperature in winter is 25° or 30° above that of the surrounding water; nor does it lose much of its warmth until it reaches the western coasts of Europe. (See page 94.)

**16. Geology.**—Nova Scotia and Cape Breton are noted for their Geological riches. Coal, iron, and gypsum are found in abundance. The rock formations of the Provinces belong to the four following systems: 1. *Azoic*, including granite, gneiss, quartz rocks, clay slate, and mica slate. 2. *Silurian*, including slates, shales, grits, and coarse limestones, with fossil shells. &c. 3. *Carboniferous*, including red and grey sandstones, shales, conglomerate, gypsum, limestone, and coal. This system contains the most important and valuable minerals. 4. A newer *Red Sandstone*, of an uncertain age, including red sandstone and red conglomerate, associated with masses of trap. The first of these groups of rocks, which may possibly be lower Silurian beds in a metamorphosed state, extends along the Atlantic coast. The second consists principally of upper Silurian rocks, in great part metamorphosed. It forms hilly ranges in the interior. The two last groups occupy all the lower parts of the Province, with the exception of the alluvial flats of the Bay of Fundy.

**Exercises.**—Give the straits, rivers, lakes, and islands. What is said of the climate and geology of Nova Scotia and Cape Breton? Describe the celebrated stream of the Gulf of Mexico.

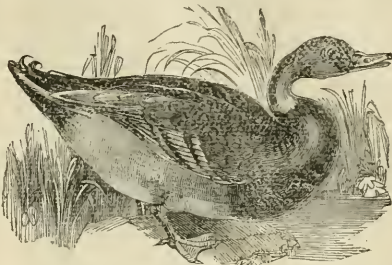
## NATURAL PRODUCTS, RAILWAYS, MANUFACTURES, AND COMMERCE.

**17. Mineral.**—The Province is rich in coal, iron, and gypsum. In *Nova Scotia* there are three principal coal fields, at which about 90,000 chaldrons are annually raised; (1) Pictou, in which are the Albion Mines, and the thickest beds known in the Province. (2) Cumberland, in which there is a mine at S. Joggins. (3) Colchester, in which mines have not yet been opened. There are three in *Cape Breton*, in Inverness and Cape Breton counties; the mines at present worked being those of N. Sydney and Bridgeport. *Gypsum* is found in Hants, Colchester, Cumberland, and Pictou counties, *Nova Scotia*; and in the southern part of *Cape Breton*. *Iron* is found in Annapolis, Colchester and Pictou counties, *Nova Scotia*; and in Cape Breton.

**18. Vegetables.**—The vegetable products of *Nova Scotia* are similar to those of Canada, viz.: wheat, oats, barley, potatoes, turnips, apples, pears, cherries, plums, &c. Early Indian corn will ripen; and peach, melon, grape, only in some seasons. Garden fruits and vegetables, however, grow in abundance. In the dyked lands at the head of the Bay of Fundy, (rich alluvial deposit thrown up by the extraordinary tides, and enclosed by dykes), the soil is very productive. Governor Sir J. G. Le Marchant, in a despatch dated in 1853, shows although the wheat raised is scarcely sufficient for the inhabitants, yet that in 1851, in wheat growing, *Nova Scotia* beat five New England States, and twelve other states and territories; in rye, she beat sixteen states and territories; in oats, thirteen; buckwheat, twenty three; in barley, every State except Ohio and New York; in hay, twenty-one; and in potatoes, twenty three.

**19. Animals.**—The usual domestic animals. Wild (Carnivora), bear, racoon, weasel, wild-cat, wolf, fox, seal (Rodentia); wood-chuck, porcupine, squirrels, beaver,

musk-rat, field-mouse; (Ruminantia), moose reindeer; (Cetacea), whale.

THE WILD DUCK, OR MALLARD (*Anas boschas*.)

**20. The Birds** are similar to those of the other provinces; but owing to its maritime position, water fowl are more abundant in *Nova Scotia*. Of these the wild duck, goose, snipe, &c., are the more valuable.

**21. Reptiles** similar to those in Canada.

**22. Fish.**—The following are in abundance, and form a staple, mackerel, herring, alewives, shad, and cod. The fisheries are prosecuted in *Nova Scotia* with great success. The value of the exports in fish and oil in 1856 amounted to upwards of three millions of dollars.

**23. Railways, Canals, &c.**—The *Nova Scotia Railway* from Halifax to Amherst, New Brunswick, is under contract (1858). A branch to Windsor (45 miles) and a portion of the main road have been completed. The *Su-ben-ac-a-die Canal*, from Halifax to Cobequid Bay, and St. Peter's Canal from St. Peter's Bay to Bras d'Or Lake (2,300 feet) are in course of construction. There were, in 1856, 1,124 miles of electric telegraph, connecting every country with Halifax, and Halifax with the United States and other Provinces, 343 Post Offices, and 4,000 miles of mail routes.

*Exercises.*—What are the natural products of *Nova Scotia* and *Cape Breton*: mineral and vegetable—animals, birds, reptiles, and fish? What is said of the railways?

**24. Manufactures** in woollens, linen, straw, feather, iron, cabinet ware, paper, &c., are carried on to some extent. Ship building is, however, the staple.

**25. The Commerce** of the Province of Nova Scotia is very extensive. She has 1,200 miles of sea-coast, and in the fishing, coasting, and foreign trade, she rivals larger countries. Her *imports* in 1856 amounted to \$9,350,000; *exports* of coal, fish, ships, gypsum, timber, &c., to \$7,500,000; the difference is made up by freight, &c. There are 43 free ports of entry. The Provincial *revenue* in 1854 amounted to \$666,000.

**26. Inhabitants.**—The Province of Nova Scotia was originally settled by a mixed population: English and Irish about Halifax; Scotch in the Eastern Counties; American United Empire Loyalists in the Western and Midland Counties; German and Swiss in Lunenburg County, (Nova

Scotia); and French, the original settlers, in various parts of the Province. These races are now blended into one, and formed a population of about 330,000, in 1857.



**27. Religious Bodies.**—The Presbyterians are the most numerous; Roman Catholics next; Baptists third; Episcopalians, fourth; Methodists, fifth; Lutherans



THE CITY OF HALIFAX, FROM DARTMOUTH.

*Exercises.*—Give a statement of the manufactures and commerce of the Province of Nova Scotia—its inhabitants—and of the various religious denominations.



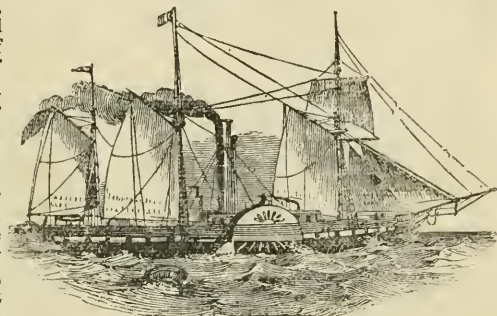
sixth; and Congregationalists seventh. All are on an equal footing.

**28. Education** is well sustained by the Legislature. There are three chartered colleges, and numerous superior schools, viz., Dalhousie, the Free Church, and St. Mary's Colleges at Halifax: King's College, near Windsor; Acadia College, at Wolfville; also Academies at Pictou and in various other counties. There are 1,200 Common Schools attended by 35,000 pupils, and a Normal School at Truro. The Legislative grant for their support was increased in 1857 from \$44,000 to \$60,000.

**29. Halifax** is one of the chief cities in British America, and the capital of Nova Scotia. It was founded in 1749, by Governor Cornwallis, and named by him after the Earl of Halifax, the active promoter of the settlement. The original name was Chebucto. The harbor formed by a bay 16 miles long, and Bedford Basin, is the finest in America, and rarely freezes in winter. It is well protected. So strong are the fortifications on the citadel, that it is called the Gibraltar of America. The city is built on the declivity of a hill, and is two miles long by about a mile wide. The streets are very spacious, and cross each other at right angles. The Province building and other public edifices are fine structures. Many of the private residences are built of stone and are very handsome. The dockyard covers 14 acres, and is the chief naval station for the royal navy in British America. The wharves are numerous. By means of the Cunard and other steamers, and the telegraph, Halifax has direct communication with Europe and the other parts of this continent. The commerce is extensive. The population is about 28,000.

**30. Annapolis** was founded by the French settlers in 1605, and named Port Royal. It was attacked and destroyed by the Virginia Colonists in 1614; restored again to the French in 1632, it remained in their hands until 1656, when it was again captured by the English, but restored a second time by the Treaty of Breda. In the war of 1689 it, a third time, fell into the hands of the English, but was a third time restored by treaty in 1697. It was a fourth time captured in the war of 1701, and by the treaty of 1713, was finally ceded to Great Britain, when its name was changed to Annapolis after Queen Anne.

**31. Louisbourg** was founded by the



French in 1720, and became their chief naval station in North America. Its commercial importance was also very great. There were at one time off the coast 600 vessels engaged in fishing, and 500,000 quintals of fish exported thence to Europe. The fortress was taken in 1745; restored, 1748; retaken by Generals Amherst and Wolfe in 1758. It was then blown up and destroyed at an expense of \$12,000. 220 pieces of cannon were captured.

**32. The other Chief Towns** in Nova Scotia, next to Halifax, are Pictou and Yar-

*Exercises.*—What is the state of education in the Province? Describe Halifax, Annapolis, and Louisbourg. What steamers touch at Halifax? What are the chief towns?



mouth. They are the leading sea-ports of the east and west. Pictou exports coal, timber, ships, and agricultural produce. Yarmouth owns a large amount of shipping and is extensively engaged in the carrying trade. The other towns are given in the following table.

**33. The Counties in Nova Scotia and Cape Breton are as follows :**

#### NOVA SCOTIA.

County.	Population.	County Town.
Annapolis .....	15000	Annapolis.
Colchester .....	16000	Truro.
Cumberland .....	15000	Amherst.
Digby .....	13000	Digby.
Guysboro.....	11000	Guysboro.

#### COUNTIES IN NOVA SCOTIA—(continued :)

County.	Population.	County Town.
Halifax.....	40000	Halifax.
Hants .....	15000	Windsor.
Kings .....	15000	Kentville.
Lunenburg.....	17000	Lunenburg.
Pictou .....	26000	Pictou.
Queens .....	8000	Liverpool.
Shelburn .....	11500	Shelburn.
Sydney .....	14000	Antigonish.
Yarmouth .....	14000	Yarmouth.

#### CAPE BRETON.

County.	Population.	County Town.
Cape Bre on .....	18000	Sydney.
Inverness .....	17500	Port Hood.
Richmond .....	11000	Arischat.
Victoria .....	11000	Bedeque.
	286,000	

#### CONSTITUTION AND CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

**34. The Constitution**, like that of Canada, is founded upon Treaties, Orders in Council, Royal Instructions, Imperial and Colonial Acts. Nova Scotia, then called Acadie, was settled by the French in 1604; ceded to England in 1714; colonized by Lord Halifax in 1749; (Cape Breton was taken by the English in 1758;) a constitution was granted in a commission to the Duke of Richmond as Governor, in 1758; in 1784 it was modified in the commission to Governor Parr; Responsible, or Parliamentary Government (as in Canada) was introduced in 1848; and the public statutes were revised and consolidated as the code of Nova Scotia in 1851.

**35. The Lieutenant Governor** is the chief executive officer. His cabinet consists of nine heads of departments, who are appointed by himself; but holding office only so long as they are sustained by the legislature, as in Canada. With the advice of his Cabinet, he appoints the judges, custos, and magistrates of counties. &c. He can pardon criminals, except for

murder or high treason, and is commander-in-chief of the militia. The Governor General of Canada is his superior officer.

**36. Legislative Council** at present (1857) consists of 21 members, who are appointed for life. They can reject or modify all but money bills sent in from the Assembly, and can originate any bill except one granting money.

**37. House of Assembly** consists of 53 members, 30 selected from the counties and 23 from certain townships, for four years. It levies taxes, controls the public expenditure, and can originate all bills. Bills passed by it must be concurred in by the Legislative Council, and assented to by the Governor, before they can become law. The Queen in council can, however, disallow any law within two years after its passing. The three branches of the legislature include the Assembly, Council, and the Lieutenant Governor. The forms of procedure are similar to those in Canada.

**38. The Courts of Law** are Error and Appeal, *i.e.*, Lieutenant Governor and

*Exercises.*—Give the counties and their chief towns. What is said of the political constitution of the Province—its Legislative Council and House of Assembly?

Council; Supreme Court (one Chief Justice and four Puisné Judges); Vice-Admiralty, Probate, Marriage and Divorce, General Sessions, and Justices' Courts. The Governor is, *ex-officio*, head of the Courts of Error and Appeal, and Marriage and Divorce.

## XII. HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA AND CAPE BRETON.

**1. Indian Tribes.**—When first discovered, Nova Scotia was inhabited by a tribe of Indians called the Micmas, or Mikmaks, living near the river Rich-i-buc-toos. The Micmacs belong to the great Algonquin family, and were called Suriquois by the French. They greatly harassed the English colonies, but, in 1761, finally submitted. In 1760, they were reduced to 3,000; afterwards to 1,000; and now they only number a few hundreds.

**2. Discovery.**—Nova Scotia, called Acadie by the French, originally included the adjoining British provinces and Maine. The name, however, is now confined to the peninsula alone. It was visited by the Cabots, in 1497; by the French, under Marquis de la Roche, in 1598; and, by virtue of Cabot's visit and discovery, was claimed and conquered by the Virginia colonists, in 1614. This was the first hostile act which occurred between the French and the English on the Continent of America.

**3. Settlement.**—In 1605, DeMonts (the French Governor,) Champlain, and others, founded Port Royal (Annapolis.) In 1621, the name Acadie was changed to Nova Scotia; and James I. granted a patent to Sir Wm. Alexander, authorising him to settle the colony; and, to promote the settlement of the colony, founded the order of (150) Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia. Each baronet was to receive 16,000 acres of land, and was required to fit out six settlers, or pay 2,000 marks. In 1625, Charles I. renewed the patent.

**4. Capture and Cession to France.**—In 1628, Port Royal was captured by Sir David Kerke; but the French still held possession of Cape Sable. In 1629–30, Sir

Wm. Alexander conveyed part of his territory to Claude (afterwards Sir Claudius) de la Tour. In 1632, Charles I. ceded the entire colony to the French, who immediately took possession of it.

**5. Cromwell's Expedition.**—In 1654, Cromwell sent Major Sedgewick, who retook the colony. The English only held possession of Port Royal, and the French continued their settlements in the interior. In 1656, Cromwell confirmed Charles De la Tour's claim, and granted to him, to Sir Thomas Temple, and to Wm. Crowne, the chief part of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Temple and Crowne purchased De la Tour's share, and expended \$80,000 in repairing the defences. In 1667, the colony was again ceded to France.

**6. New England Expedition.**—In 1690, Sir Wm. Phipps, from Massachusetts, took Port Royal, which he dismantled, but did not retain possession of the country. In 1707, another New England expedition, under Colonel Marsh, sailed from Nan-tucket for Port Royal, but failed to do more than destroy property of considerable value outside the fort. Again in 1710, an armament, under General Nicholson, left Boston. He captured the city, and changed its name

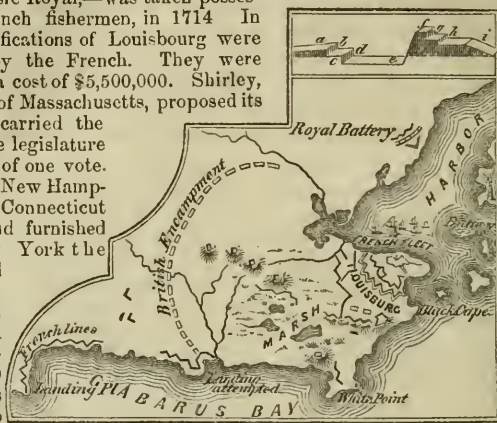
*Exercises.*—Which are the courts of law? Give an account of the Indian tribes—the discovery and settlement of Nova Scotia—its capture and cession to France, Cromwell's expedition, &c.

to Annapolis, in honour of Queen Anne. In 1713, by the treaty of Utrecht, Acadie was ceded to England, and the name Nova Scotia confirmed.

**7. First Capture of Louisbourg.**—Cape Breton, originally called Isle du Cap; then Breton, by the French from Brittany; and in 1713, Isle Royal,—was taken possession of by French fishermen, in 1714. In 1720, the fortifications of Louisbourg were commenced by the French. They were completed at a cost of \$5,500,000. Shirley, the Governor of Massachusetts, proposed its capture, and carried the measure in the legislature by a majority of one vote. Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Connecticut also joined and furnished troops; New York the artillery; and Pennsylvania, provisions, &c. The command of the expedition (of 3,200 strong) was entrusted to

General Pepperwell. At Canseau they were joined by some English ships, under the command of Commodore Warren, with 800 men. They reached Gabarus Bay on the 9th May, and landed in the rear of the town. Their encampment extended in a curved line, outside the fortress. They soon

captured the outposts, and the Royal Battery of 400 men. Warren also captured a 74-gun ship, with 500 men and military stores. To reach the fort, cannon were dragged on sledges across the marsh, and on the 21st of May, the siege was commenced. Other ships soon afterwards arrived, and then it was decided to attack the place. But, despairing of a suc-



CAPTURE OF LOUISBOURG IN 1745.

[EXPLANATION OF THE UPPER PART OF THE MAP.—*a*. Glacis, or extreme outside slope of the defences; *b*. Banquette, or step, upon which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet (*f*); *c*. Covered way into the fort, under the banquette; *d*. Counterscarp, a bank or wall outside the ditch (*e*); *e*. The ditch or trench; *f*. The parapet, or protection for men and guns inside; *g*. The inner banquette; *h*. Ramparts, or more solid embankments of the fort; *i*. Talus, or last slope inside the fort.]

cessful resistance, the French capitulated on the 28th June, 1745. The stores and prizes captured amounted to \$5,000,000. In 1746, the Duke d'Anville was sent with a French fleet to retake the island; but storms and disease wasted his forces, and the enterprise was abandoned. In 1748, the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle restored Cape Breton to the French, against the wish of the New England captors (whose expenses

of upwards of a million of dollars were, however, repaid by England), but the same treaty confirmed the cession of Nova Scotia to the British Crown.

**8. Halifax Founded.**—In 1749, after the peace, nearly 4,000 disbanded soldiers, under Governor Cornwallis, arrived in Chebueto Harbour, and on its shores commenced the settlement of a town, which, in honour of the then President of the

*Exercises.*—Give an account of the New England expedition against Nova Scotia, and the first capture of Louisbourg. Describe the engraving. What names were first given to Cape Breton?

English Board of Trade and Plantations, they named "Halifax."

**9. English Government.**—On the 14th July, 1749, Cornwallis established the government of the colony, and appointed six members of council to aid him. In 1753, 400 Germans joined the colony, and settled in the county of Lunenburg.

**10. Old French War.**—The great war of 1756-63, called the French and Indian war, which ended in the cession of Canada, originated solely in territorial disputes between the French and English colonists on the banks of the Ohio; it afterwards involved the whole line of rival forts and trading posts extending from the Ohio through Canada to Acadia.

**11. Expulsion of the Acadians.**—Fearing that the Acadian French would aid their countrymen in invading Nova Scotia, the English colonists collected the Acadian population, at various points, on pretence of conferring with them, and then suddenly forced them on board several ships, and conveyed them to New England, New York, and Virginia. Their places were filled by New England colonists. After the peace of 1763, many of them returned to Nova Scotia, and settled in the interior.

**12. Final Capture of Louisbourg.**—In 1758, Louisbourg was finally captured from the French, by Wolfe, Amherst, and

Boscawen, and its fortifications blown up and destroyed. They are now in ruins.

**13. Settled Government.**—In 1758, a constitution was granted to Nova Scotia by England; and in 1761, the Indians of the colony acknowledged the authority of the Governor. After the American revolution, many of the exiled Royalists settled in Nova Scotia; and in 1784, Cape Breton was erected into a separate government, with a capital at Sydney; but in 1819, it was again re-united to Nova Scotia, and authorised to send two members to the Legislature. In that year, efforts were first formally made to protect the English fisheries on the coast.

**14. Present Period.**—In 1838, a deputation from Nova Scotia was sent to confer with Lord Durham (Governor General of British North America), at Quebec, on a proposed change in the constitution; and in 1840, a system of government, responsible to the Legislature, was introduced. In 1851, further efforts were made to protect the fisheries; and in 1852, a Provincial force, auxiliary to the Imperial, was placed under the direction of the British Admiral for that purpose. Since then, a fishing treaty and a reciprocity treaty have been effected with the United States and Canada. Peace and prosperity now prevail within the borders of Nova Scotia.

#### GOVERNORS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

Hon. E. Cornwallis .....	1749	Hon. R. Hughes .....	1778	General Smyth .....	1816
Hon. P. Hobson .....	1752	Sir A. S. Hammond .....	1781	Earl of Dalhousie .....	1819
Hon. C. Lawrence .....	1754	Hon. J. Parr .....	1782	Sir J. Kempt .....	1820
Hon. R. Moulton .....	1756	Hon. E. Fanning .....	1783	Hon. M. Wallace .....	1826
Hon. J. Belcher .....	1760	Hon. R. Bulkeley .....	1791	Sir Perigriue Maitland ..	1823
Hon. M. Wilmot .....	1764	Hon. J. Wentworth .....	1792	Sir Colin Campbell .....	1836
Hon. M. Franklin .....	1766	Hon. A. Cooke .....	1808	Lord Falkland .....	1840
Lord W. Campbell .....	1772	Sir G. Prevost .....	1809	General Sir J. Harvey ..	1846
Hon. F. Dege .....	1773	Sir J. Sherbrooke .....	1811	Sir J. G. le Marchant ..	1852
Hon. M. Arbutnot .....	1776	General Darrock .....	1811	The Earl of Mulgrave ..	1857

*Exercises.*—When was the English government established? What is said of the French war, the expulsion of the Acadians, and the final capture of Louisbourg? Name the governors of Nova Scotia.



### XIII. PROVINCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

**1. Extent and Boundaries.**—New Brunswick (in shape an irregular square) is situated between the parallels of  $45^{\circ}$  and  $48^{\circ}$  north latitude, and the meridians of  $63^{\circ} 45'$  and  $67^{\circ} 50'$  west longitude. Its area is 27,620 square miles, and includes 18,000,000 acres. It is bounded on the north by the bay of Chaleurs and Lower Canada; on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Nova Scotia; on the south by the bay of Fundy; and on the west by the State of Maine. It was formerly called Nurembega.

**2. The Surface** of New Brunswick is most agreeably diversified with hill and dale, mountain and valley. None of the other Provinces is more uniformly and plentifully supplied with running streams and noble rivers. Its forests are well wooded, and its intervals of land rich fertile.

**3. Geology.**—Two belts of granitic and other igneous rocks of the Appalachian mountains enter the Province from the westward, and extend across it in a north-easterly direction, accompanied by metamorphosed beds of Silurian, and perhaps Devonian, age. The northern belt enters near Woodstock, embracing Mars Hill and the Tobique Mountains, which rise to the height of 2,200 feet. The southern belt embraces the Nerepis Hills, and the ranges of hills extending eastward through the counties of Kings, St. John, and Charlotte. The island of Grand Manan is a remarkable specimen. The *lower Silurian* rocks form a broad belt south of the Tobique Hills. The *upper Silurian* rocks cover near the whole northern part of New Brunswick. This is the most fertile part of the Province. The *lower carboniferous* rocks occur everywhere between the Silurian rocks and the coal measures. They abound in gypsum, and give origin to salt springs. The *upper carboniferous* rocks, or coal measures, cover a large portion of the central and eastern part of New Brunswick. The *tertiary* and *alluvial* deposits are found along the coasts of the Bay of Fundy.

**4. The Lakes** are Grand Lake, Te-miscou-a-ta, and numerous smaller lakes.

**5. The Rivers** are St. John, Ma-da-was-ka, Ken-ne-bee-ca-sis, Pe-tit-co-di-ac, Rich-i-bucto, Mi-ra-mi-chi, Res-ti-gou-che (or "big-mouthed river" of the Indians), and St. Croix, the southern boundary river between New Brunswick and the State of Maine.

**6. The St. John**, or principal river, is 450 miles long. Its Indian name was Loosh-took, or Long river. It drains 9,000,000 acres in New Brunswick, 2,000,000 acres in Canada, and 6,000,000 acres in the United States. It is navigable to Fredericton, the capital, 84 miles from the sea. From this point small steamers ply to Woodstock, 60 miles further. In high water they can go to the Grand Falls, 220 miles from the sea. This cataract is 40 feet high. The Madawaska is 40 miles further up. The lakes

and tributaries of the river St. John make it a noble stream.

**7. The Res-ti-gouche**, or boundary river between Canada and New Brunswick, is 200 miles long, draining 4,000 square miles of richly timbered country. It falls into the Bay of Chaleurs.

**8. The Mir-am-i-chi** is 225 miles long, and 9 miles wide at its mouth. The tide flows up 40 miles, 30 of which large vessels can navigate.

**9. The Bays** are Chaleurs, Miramichi, Buc-touche, Cocagne, She-di-ac, Chi-eg-nec-to, Fundy, St. John, and Pas-sam-a-quod-dy.

**10. The Cha-leurs**, a large inlet from the Gulf of St. Lawrence, is 90 miles long, by from 15 to 30 miles wide, and has neither shoal, reef, or other impediment to navigation. On the Canadian side, the

*Exercises.*—What is said of the extent and boundaries of New Brunswick—its surface, geology, lakes, and rivers? Describe the St. John, the Restigouche, and the Miramachi. Give the Bays, &c.

shores are bold and mountainous—on the New Brunswick side, low and broken. The bay is celebrated for the variety and abundance of its fish.

## CLIMATE AND NATURAL PRODUCTS.

**11. The Climate** is less severe than in Lower Canada, and is very healthy. Fogs, from the Bay of Fundy, rarely extend inland for more than 20 or 30 miles. The autumn is beautiful. Winter begins in December and ends in March.

**12. The Mineral** products are coal, iron, Albertite (asphalt, or pitch coals, manganese, plumbago, lead, granite, gypsum, limestone, marble, sandstone, grindstone, oilstone, Iceland spar, slate, potters' clay, peat, ochres, &c. &c. Salt and mineral springs abound.

**13. Vegetables,** Flowers, and Fruits, are similar to those generally grown in Upper Canada.



**14. Animals.**—The caribou and other deer are found, besides the animals common to the other Provinces; wild fowl, &c.



**15. Timber and Ships** are the grand staple of New Brunswick. Its bays and rivers abound with fish. The chief are the cod, pollock, hake, haddock, herring, mackerel, halibut, shad, shell-fish, salmon, and ale-wives. The value of fish annually exported is about \$300,000.

## POPULATION, RELIGION, AND EDUCATION.

**16. The Population** of New Brunswick is about 220,000. The Province was chiefly settled by American United Empire Loyalists, a few French, and by emigrants from Great Britain.

**17. Religion.**—The clergy of the Province are thus given for 1853:—Church of England, 60 (1 bishop); Church of Rome, 26 (1 bishop); Presbyterian, 25; Wesleyan, 33; Baptists, 50. Total places of worship, 450.

**18. Education.**—King's College, Fredericton; Baptist Seminary, Fredericton;

Mount Alison Wesleyan College, Sackville; Congregational Academy, St. Stephen; 11 County Grammar Schools; 1 Collegiate School; 900 Common Schools, in 1855, attended by 29,000 pupils; besides Madras and other schools. There is a Provincial Superintendent, a Board of Education, and a Training and Model School. The yearly legislative grant is \$111,500. The whole system of popular education has lately been re-organised and improved, and is now upon an efficient footing.

## CITIES, TOWNS, AND COUNTIES.

**19. Cities and Towns.**—Cities; Fredericton, and St. John. Towns; St. Andrews, Woodstock, Sackville, Dalhousie, Bathurst,

Chatham, Newcastle, St. Stephens, Richibucto, Moncton, and Dorchester.

**20. Fredericton**, the capital, is plea-

*Exercises.*—What is said of the climate? What are the mineral, vegetable, and animal products? Give the population, religion, and education. Which are the chief towns?

santly situated on a level plain, on the right bank of the river St. John, county of York, about 84 miles from the Bay of Fundy. Its streets are wide, and cross each other at right angles. In front of the city, the river makes a bold sweep; and in the rear a range of hills extend, giving a handsome appearance to the city. The Government House is a large stone building; as is also King's College. The Parliament House is of wood. There are barracks, and other public buildings, besides churches, &c. The population is about 5,000.

**21. St. John,** the chief city of the Province, contains a population of 35,000. It is situated at the mouth of the river St. John, and was incorporated by Royal charter, in 1785. It is well built, and contains many fine houses of stone and brick. The eastern part of the city stands on a rocky peninsula, projecting into the harbour, and is regularly laid out, and when approached from the sea, has an imposing appearance. The principal buildings, besides the churches, are: the marine hospital, barracks, court house, prison, lunatic asylum, penitentiary,

and government store-houses. In 1837, a destructive fire visited the city. The harbour is capacious, safe, and free from ice. The entrance, (two miles south of the city) is protected by a battery on Partridge Island. The tide in the harbour rises 20 or 25 feet. The commerce of the port is very extensive. In 1856, the exports alone amounted to the sum of \$3,566,310.

**22. The Counties,** their chief towns and population are as follows:—

County.	Population.	Chief Town.
Albert .....	6,500	Hopewell.
Carleton .....	11,500	Woodstock.
Charlotte .....	20,500	St. Andrews.
Gloucester.....	12,000	Bathurst.
Kent .....	12,000	Richibucto.
Kings .....	19,500	Kingston.
Northumberland ..	15,500	Newcastle.
Queen's .....	11,000	Gagetown.
Restigouche .....	4,500	Dalhousie.
St. John .....	39,000	St. John.
Sunbury.....	5,500	Oromocto.
Victoria .....	6,000	Grand Falls.
Westmoreland .....	18,200	Dorchester.
York .....	18,300	Fredericton.
Total.....	220,009	

#### THE CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

**23. Government.**—The form of government is similar to that of Nova Scotia and Canada.

**24. Governor.**—The chief executive officer exercises the same functions as does the Lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia, &c. He is aided by a Provincial cabinet of nine heads of departments, whose tenure of office depends upon legislative support. The Governor General of Canada is officially his superior officer, but does not, of course, interfere in his local administration.

**25. The Legislature** is constituted like that of the other colonies. The Legis-

lative Council consists of 23 members, appointed by the Crown, for life. The House of Assembly consists of 41 members, elected by the people.

**26. Revenue and Expenditure.**—The revenue for the year 1857 amounted to nearly \$660,000; and the expenditure to about the same sum.

**27. The Courts** are: the Supreme Court, with Equity powers (1 chief and 4 puisné judges); Vice Admiralty, Piracy, Probate, Marriage, and Divorce; inferior Courts of Common Pleas, General Sessions, and Justices.

#### COMMERCE, RAILWAYS, AND MANUFACTURES.

**28. Commerce.**—The fine rivers, bays, and great extent of sea coast, give New

Brunswick very large commercial facilities. There are about 1,000 vessels (15,000 tons)

*Exercises.*—Describe Fredericton and St. John. Give the counties and their chief towns. What is said of the government, governor, and legislature? What is the revenue and expenditure? &c.

large and small, engaged in trade, fishing, &c. The principal exports are timber, fish, iron, coal, and gypsum, valued at \$7,000,000 annually; imports, about the same. In 1857, the exports amounted to \$7,088,800.

**29. Railways.**—1. European and North American, from St. John to Shediac, 107 miles; with a projected branch to Nova Scotia, 37 miles; thence to Canada; and from St. John to the State of Maine, 75 miles. 2. From St. Andrew's to Woodstock, 100 miles. Other lines of railway are also



projected. \$150,000 are annually granted by the Legislature, for the improvement of roads and bridges. One great road extends



from St. John to Canada; another from the State of Maine, through St. John, to Nova Scotia, Shediac, and Restigouche. A suspension bridge crosses the St. John river at the city of St. John.

**30. Manufactures,** include coarse woollens, leather, soap, candles, wooden ware, cabinet ware, cast-iron ware, &c. &c. There are about 150 ships, built annually; value \$2,250,000. There are also 600 saw-mills, 300 grist mills, 150 tanneries, 20 foundries, 60 carding and weaving establishments, and 6,000 hand-looms.

#### XIV. HISTORY OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

**1. Indians.**—When Europeans first visited New Brunswick, three Algonquin nations occupied Acadie and the coast of New Brunswick and Maine, viz., The Mick-maks, or Sou-ri-quois, from Gaspé Bay to the river St. Croix; the Etch-e-mins, or Milicetes (canoe men), from St. Croix to Penobscot river; and the Ab-na-quis, or Kan-ni-bas, from Penobscot to the Kennebec river. These three nations afterwards became more closely united, and

*Exercises.*—What is said of the commerce of New Brunswick? Give an account of the railways and manufactures. State what is said of the Indians of New Brunswick.



were known by the French under the name of the "Nations Abnaquises." The Etchemins and Abnaquis have a few small colonies on the river St. John. They are known as Malecites. In 1851 these Indians numbered 1,116.

**2. Discovery.**—Jacques Cartier made his first voyage to the New World in 1534; and on the 9th of July, entered a deep bay, which, from the intense heat he experienced there, he named the "Baie de Chaleurs." He was pleased with the country, and experienced kind treatment from the inhabitants. In 1604, De Monts was commissioned by Henri IV. to make further discoveries; and after visiting Rosinol, Nova Scotia, he entered la Baye François, since named the Bay of Fundy; and on the festival of St. John the Baptist (24th June), reached the great river Ou-au-gon-dy, which he named St. John's river. Entering another river, he erected a fort; and from the cross-shaped configuration of the stream and its tributaries, he named it St. Croix. This was abandoned, in 1605, for Port Royal.

**3. Part of Nova Scotia.**—At this time the entire country, extending from New England to the Bay of Chaleurs, including the islands, was called Acadie. The English claimed it from the discoveries of Cabot, and the French from possession. The chief settlements were at Port Royal (Annapolis) and St. Croix.

**4. Original Grants.**—In 1621, James I. of England granted to Sir Wm. Alexander, afterwards Earl of Stirling, the whole of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island. With this grant he instituted the order of the Baronets of Nova Scotia, on condition that the baronets would colonize the country. In 1625, Charles I. renewed the grant, and included in it the whole of the country from the St. Lawrence to California.

**5. Disputes and Seizure.**—Failing to gain possession himself, Sir William, in 1627, despatched Sir David Kertk and his

brother forcibly to expel the French. They soon captured Port Royal, St. Croix, and Pen-ta-go-et (Penobscot). They also made a prisoner of Claude de la Tour, to whom the French King had made a grant of a tract of a country on the St. John.

**6. Compromise of Claims.**—In England, la Tour and Lord Stirling agreed to compromise their claims, each to receive a part. La Tour's son, who resided at Sable Island, refused; but in 1632, Charles I. ceded the whole country to Louis XIII. and granted Lord Stirling £10,000 as indemnity.

**7. Madame la Tour.**—La Tour soon erected a fort at Gem-see, on the St. John; but his success excited the jealousy of the French Governor, Charnissé. In 1638, Louis XIII. defined the territory of the disputants. New Brunswick was assigned to la Tour. Nevertheless, the dispute continued, and Charnissé, in the absence of la Tour, sought to capture the Fort at St. John. Madame la Tour, an English lady, gallantly defended the Fort, and Charnissé retired in disgrace. Again he made the attempt; and Madame de la Tour, being betrayed by a Swiss, capitulated. Charnissé, with a great barbarity, hanged all the survivors, and compelled his victim, with a halter round her neck, to witness their execution. Her sufferings were too great, and she died soon after.

**8. Indian Inroads.**—In 1639, French settlements were made on the Bay of Chaleurs; and in 1672, on the river Miramichi, and at other places on the eastern coast. The colonists suffered much from the Indians, and were involved in the contests between the Mohawks and the Micmacs. The Mohawks were victorious; but in 1692 the Micmacs, under their chief, Halion,

---

*Exercises.*—Trace the history of the Province, from its discovery, until 1638. What is said of Sir W. Alexander, Sir David Kertk, Claude la Tour, Madame la Tour, and the Indian inroads?

attacked the whites, burned their houses, and compelled them to fly. To allay this enmity, the French authorities offered bounties to such colonists as would marry Indian wives.

**9. Captures and Cession.**—In 1654, Cromwell having directed Colonel Sedge-wick to recover Nova Scotia from the French, he defeated la Tour on the St. John, and took the whole of Acadie.—In 1667, the colony was again ceded to France, by Charles II. In 1690, Sir Wm. Phipps took Port Royal and St. John. Villabon, however, soon re-captured them; and from St. John the Indians were supplied with arms to attack the English colonies in New England. The people of Massachusetts retaliated; and Lieut. Col. Church took Acadie. with the exception of St. John. In 1696, the country was again ceded to France, by the Treaty of Ryswick. In 1704, Col. Church again attacked St. John, but failed. In 1710, Gen. Nicholson captured Port Royal, the chief port in Nova Scotia, which he named Annapolis; and in 1713, by the Treaty of Utrecht, the whole of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick was ceded to Great Britain. In 1758 the first Parliament of the Colony met at Halifax.

**10. Local Contests.**—From 1713 until 1763, contests with the Indians and attacks from the French, who endeavored to regain the country colonized by their countrymen, and disputes as to the boundary, harassed the English settlements. But by the treaty of 1763, which followed the capture of Louisbourg and Quebec, France renounced all claim to either Acadie or Canada.

**11. Settlement and Early Privations.**—In 1764 emigration from Great Britain and the adjoining colonies flowed into New Brunswick. William Davidson, from Scotland, formed a settlement at Miramichi, which in 1777 was nearly destroyed by the Indians who had declared in favor

of the American revolutionists. Privateers also pillaged the settlement. In 1783 peace was proclaimed, and great numbers of the disbanded troops and of the United Empire Loyalists settled in New Brunswick.

**12. A Separate Province.**—In 1784 New Brunswick (then the county of Sunbury) was detached from Nova Scotia and became a separate province. A constitution was granted to it by royal charter, and General Thomas Carleton appointed governor. During his administration of 20 years, the country prospered greatly. In 1809, a duty was imposed upon timber coming from the Baltic into England while that from New Brunswick and other colonies was admitted free. This continued to give a great impulse to the timber trade of the country, until in 1825; from over trading, a reaction took place. It again recovered, and although subject to fluctuation, the timber trade and commerce of New Brunswick has continued to flourish.

**13. Fire in Miramichi Woods.**—In 1826, a great fire devastated the entire east coast of Miramichi, covering an area of 6,000 square miles. 500 lives were lost, and property to the amount of a million of dollars destroyed. \$200,000 were collected in various places for the sufferers.

**14. Fire in St. John.**—In 1837 a destructive fire visited the City of St. John. 115 houses, and property to the value of \$1,000,000 were destroyed.

**15. Revenue Surrendered.**—In 1837, the revenues of the Province were surrendered to the local government on condition that the payment of the salaries of certain civil officers, amounting to \$58,000 per annum, should be granted to Her Majesty.

**16. Ashburton Treaty, &c.**—In 1842, the Ashburton Treaty between Great Britain and the United States was framed. By this treaty the disputed boundary between Maine and New Brunswick was set-

*Exercises.*—Still further trace the history of the Province, from 1639 to 1837; captures and cession, local contests, early privations, separate province, fires in Miramichi and St. John, &c.

tled. The territory in dispute contained 12,000 square miles, or 7,700,000 acres. Maine received 4,500,000 acres, and New Brunswick 3,200,000. Reciprocity treaties and arrangements with the United States and Canada, and other Provinces, have since been effected.

**17. Responsible Government**, similar to that of Canada, was introduced in

1848. Since then the Province has increased in wealth, population, and importance; and now equally with the other North American colonies enjoys the protection of Great Britain, and the fullest exercise of political freedom, compatible with the maintenance of that cordal and happy connection which subsists between New Brunswick and the mother country.

#### GOVERNORS OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

Gen. Thos. Carleton, Governor-in-chief.....	1784	Hon. Ward Chipman (President) .....	1823
Hon. G. G. Ludlow (Pres.) .....	1786	Hon. J. M. Bliss .....	1826
Hon. E. Winslow.....	1803	General Sir Howard Douglas .....	1829
Colonel G. Johnston .....	1808	Hon. W. Black (President) .....	1829
General M. Hunter.....	1809	General Sir A. Campbell .....	1831
General W. Balfour.....	1811	General Sir John Harvey.....	1837
General G. S. Smyth.....	1812	Colonel Sir W. M. G. Colebrooke .....	1841
General Sir J. Saumarez .....	1813	Sir E. Walker Head .....	1848
Colonel H. W. Hailes.....	1816	Hon. J. H. T. Manners Sutton .....	1854

### XV. PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

**1. Position and Extent.**—The crescent-shaped island of Prince Edward stretches along the southern portion of the deep semi-circular basin of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, which lies between Cape Breton and New Brunswick. It is equi-distant from both, and follows the curve of their coast line.

**2. Size.**—It is 130 miles long and 30 wide. Its area is 2,173 square miles, and it contains 1,365,000 acres, 942,000 acres of which are under cultivation.

**3. Boundaries.**—It is bounded on the north-east and west by the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and on the south by Northumberland Strait, which is nine miles wide.

#### PHYSICAL FEATURES.

**4. The Surface** is slightly undulating. A chain of hills extends the whole length of the Island; but in no place do they reach any high elevation.

**5. The Coast Indentations** are very numerous; the chief are: Hillsboro' and Richmond Bays, penetrating the Island from opposite directions, and dividing it into three separate peninsulas.

**6. Bays.**—The chief bays on the north side are Holland and Richmond; east, Col-

ville, Cardigan, and Murray; south, Hillsboro', Orwell, Bedeque, and Egmont.

**7. Geology.**—The prevailing rock is soft, reddish sandstone, probably of Permian or Triassic age, and covered by a red loamy soil, of great fertility. Portions of the upper coal measures appear to occur in limited patches, on the south side of the island; but no iron, coal, or gypsum has been discovered.

**8. The Soil** is reddish loam and of ex-

*Exercises.*—What is said of responsible government? Who were the governors of the Province? Describe Prince Edward Island—its position, size, boundaries, surface, coast indentations, bays, &c.

cellent quality; it is free from rock, easy of tillage, and very productive.

**9. The Climate** is remarkably healthy; and is milder than that of the adjoining continent. No epidemic prevails; the Asiatic cholera which ravaged the adjoining colonies, has never visited Prince Edward Island. The air is dry and bracing. Fogs

are rare; and winter, though cold, is agreeable. Summer, owing to the insular character of the country, is tempered by the sea breezes. The autumn is generally very fine; the blue sky, with the changing tints of the foliage in the day, and the brilliant Aurora Borealis at night, render this the most beautiful season of the year.

#### NATURAL PRODUCTS.

**10. Vegetable.**—Agriculture is the chief resource of the colony. Oats, wheat, barley, potatoes, and turnips, are the chief staples. Hemp and flax are also cultivated. The ordinary fruits grow in abundance. (The railroad in the engraving is only prospective.)

**11. Timber**—Beech is the prevailing timber; birch, maple, elm, oak, pine, hemlock, spruce, and cedar also grow in abundance. Fire and the lumberer's axe have, however, greatly thinned the forests of these valuable trees.

**12. The Animals, &c.**—The birds, fish, reptiles and insects, are similar to those of Nova Scotia. The fishing grounds lying along the northern shore are very productive in cod, hake or ling, mackerel, and herring, which are caught in large quantities.



#### POPULATION, RELIGION, AND EDUCATION.

**13. The Population** is about 72,000, and is made up of descendants of the Scotch, Irish, Acadian French, English and Colonial settlers. The different nationalities prevail in the order in which they are named; but they soon become blended in the general population of the island.

**14. Education.**—Prince Edward Island is doing nobly for education. One-third of its revenue is devoted to its promotion. There are a normal and model school, and an academy at Charlottetown. A system of free schools has also been lately established. There are about 280 district schools in operation, attended by 15,000 pupils, besides the national school

at Charlottetown, and private schools. The legislative grant for education has lately been increased to about \$40,000 per annum. A college has also been recently projected by the Roman Catholic bishop.

**14. Religion.**—Nearly one-half of the population are Roman Catholics. The following are the chief religious persuasions:

Roman Catholics .....	32,000
Presbyterians .....	22,500
Protestant Episcopalians .....	6,700
Methodists .....	5,500
Baptists .....	3,050
Others .....	4,300

Total population..... 72,050

*Exercises.*—What is said of the climate of the island? What are the natural products. the population, the means of education, and religion of Prince Edward Island?



## CIVIL DIVISIONS OF THE PROVINCE.

**16. Towns, &c.**—Charlottetown, the capital, is the only city in the island; Georgetown, Princetown, St. Davids, and Dartmouth are the other principal towns.

**17. The Counties** are: King, Queen, and Prince's, divided into sixty-seven townships (numbered from 1 to 67), three royalties, and six islands.

**18. Charlottetown**, the capital of the island, is situated on the southern shore of Hillsboro' Bay. The harbor is one of the best in the gulf. The city is well built, and is situated on gently rising ground. The site is most agreeable, and overlooks the Elliott river. It covers an area of 150 acres, and was incorporated in 1855. Its principal streets, which cross each other at right angles, are 100 feet in width. The

others are 80, 60, and 40 feet wide. There are four public squares, on one of which, called the Queen's Square, the Province Building stands. It is 140 feet long by 50 feet wide, is built of stone, in the Grecian style of architecture. It contains the chambers for both branches of the legislature, the Supreme Court, the legislative library, and the public offices. The government buildings, churches, and barracks, are the chief public edifices. There are an academy and other schools. Ship-building is extensively carried on. The population of the city and royalty is about 6,600. The Government House stands on a plot of 80 acres, on the banks of the Hillsboro' river, near the city. The Lunatic Asylum, a fine building, stands to the west of the city.

## CIVIL GOVERNMENT, COMMERCE, REVENUE, ETC.

**19. The Executive** Government consists of a Lieutenant Governor, and a responsible cabinet of nine members, who hold seats in either branch of the legislature, as in Nova Scotia and Canada.

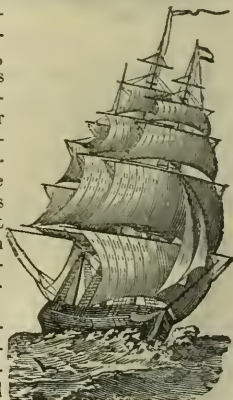
**20. The Legislature** consists of the Lieutenant Governor, a Legislative Council of 12 members, and a House of Assembly of 30 members. The forms of procedure are similar to the other colonial legislatures. The members of either house are paid \$120 each for their services during the session.

**21. The Judiciary** consists, 1st, of a Supreme Court, with a Chief Justice, a Master of the Rolls, and two Assistant Judges; 2nd, a Court of Chancery, presided over by the Lieutenant Governor, assisted by the Master of the Rolls, who is one of the Assistant Judges; 3rd, Vice-Admiralty Court, the Criminal Court of which is presided over by the Lieutenant Governor and the Instance Court by the Chief Justice; and, 4th, of the Court of

Marriage and Divorce, presided over by the Lieutenant Governor. There are also the usual inferior courts.

**22. The Commerce** of the island consists in the exchange of its agricultural produce, timber, ships built at the island, and fish, for British and American manufactures, and for the various products of the adjacent colonies, with which it has reciprocity arrangements.

**23. The Exports and Imports.**—The exports are valued



*Exercises.*—Give the civil divisions of the Province. Describe the government, legislature, and judiciary. What is said of the commerce, and what are exports and imports of the island?

at \$1,210,000, and the imports at \$1,500,000. In 1856, the imports were \$1,426,260, and the exports \$1,208,640, including \$536,760 for 14,910 tons of shipping, at \$36 per ton.

**24. Revenue and Expenditure.**—The revenue is estimated at \$62,000, and the expenditure about the same. In 1856, the revenue was \$62,648. The public debt is about \$70,000.

**25. The Manufactures** are chiefly for domestic use. They consist of cabinet-ware, linens, woollens, cast iron, &c. Ship-building, for the British and Newfoundland market, is prosecuted with considerable skill and enterprise. About 100 ships are annually built. The fisheries are very valuable. About 400 vessels belong to the island.

## XVI. HISTORY OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

**1. Discovery.**—Sebastian Cabot discovered this island on St. John's day, 1497. From this circumstance, it was called by Champlain, St. John's Island—a name which it retained until 1800.

**2. Original Grant.**—The island was long included in the territory of New France; and in 1663, with the Magdalen, Bird, and Biron Islands, it was granted to Sieur Doublet, a French naval captain, for fishing purposes. After the Treaty of Utrecht, in 1715, many French families removed to the island from Cape Breton.

**3. Captures.**—In 1745 it was taken by the New Englanders; but was restored by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. In 1758, it was again taken, and by the Treaty of 1763, finally ceded to the British Crown.

**4. Removal of the Inhabitants.**—Many of the French inhabitants, having aided the Micmac Indians in their attacks on the English settlements in Nova Scotia, were forcibly removed with the Acadians in 1760. Their systematic aggression on the British colonists was much censured in France, as producing unnecessary irritation.

**5. Survey and Settlement.**—In 1766, the island was surveyed. Lord Egmont's plan to erect it into feudal baronies was not approved; but in 1767 it was divided into townlands (or townships), of 20,000 acres, and distributed by lottery among

army and navy officers and others, having claims upon the government. Only a small portion of the island was reserved. The settlement of the island progressed very slowly under this system.

**6. Separate Government.**—The proprietors having petitioned the King, His Majesty, in 1770, erected Prince Edward Island into a separate government, and appointed Walter Paterson, Esq., the first governor.

**7. Constitution Granted.**—In 1773, a constitution, similar to those of the other North American provinces, was granted, and in that year the first meeting of the legislature took place. The government consisted of a Lieutenant Governor, aided by an Executive Council of 9; a Legislative Council of 6, and the House of Assembly of 24 members. Of the Executive Council, three were members of the Legislative Council, and one of the House of Assembly. This constitution was modified in 1851.

**8. Washington and the Islanders.**—In 1775, two American cruisers, taking advantage of the defenceless state of the island, attacked and plundered Charlottetown, carrying off the acting governor and two other civil officers. The matter having been reported to General Washington, he reprimanded and dismissed the captains of the cruisers, restored the plundered property, and set the governor and his

*Exercises.*—Give the revenue and expenditure of the island from its discovery, in 1497, to 1773. What are the manufactures? Trace the history of Washington?

officers free, with many courteous expressions of regret for their sufferings.

**9. Duke of Kent and the Islanders.**

—The Duke of Kent (father to the Queen), who for ten years resided, at different times, on the island, as commander-in-chief, paid great attention to the state of its defences. He had batteries erected for the protection of Charlottetown; organised the militia into infantry, and cavalry troops, and thus effectually guarded the island from molestation during the revolutionary war. He left in 1800; and as a mark of attachment to their protector, the islanders changed the name of the island from St. John to Prince Edward.

**10. Quit Rents Composition.**—In 1776, the proportion of rents paid by the proprietors not being sufficient to defray the expenses of government, the British parliament made an annual grant for that purpose. In 1801, the arrears of quit rents amounted to \$300,000. To relieve the proprietary of this heavy burthen, the Government accepted a liberal composition for the debt.

**11. Increased Emigration.**—The effect of this generous step was at once perceptible in the increased prosperity of the

island. In 1803, the Earl of Selkirk (who afterwards colonised Red River settlement) took over 800 Highlanders; their numbers were afterwards increased to 4,000.

**12. The Governors.**—Governor Patterson, being accused of impeding the settlement and cultivation of the island, by monopoly, was succeeded by Governor Fanning, who, in his turn, was succeeded by Governor Desbarres, and then by Col. Smith, in 1813. Smith's tyrannical conduct, however, caused so much agitation, that he was recalled in 1823. Governors Ready and Young (appointed in 1831), were succeeded by Sir John Harvey, in 1836; Sir Charles Fitzroy, in 1837; Sir H. V. Huntly, in 1841; Sir Donald Campbell, in 1847; by Sir Dominick Daly, formerly of Canada, in 1854, and the present Governor, in 1859.

**13. Responsible Government.**—The House of Assembly having passed an address to Her Majesty, in 1847, praying for the introduction of responsible government into the Province, that system was fully introduced into the island in 1851. General prosperity has since prevailed; and every effort is now made to develop the intellectual and physical resources of this island.

## **XVII. THE ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND.**

**1. Position.**—This island, occupying so important a place between Europe and America, lies at the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and between the parallels of  $46^{\circ} 40'$  and  $51^{\circ} 37'$  north latitude, and the meridians of  $52^{\circ} 25'$  and  $59^{\circ} 15'$  west longitude. St. John's, the capital, in the peninsula of Avalon, is only 1,640 geographical miles from Ireland.

**2. Shape and Size.**—It is triangular in shape, like England. Its length, measured in a curve from Cape Race to Grignet Bay, is 420 miles; breadth, from Cape Ray to Bonavista, is 300 miles; and its area, 56,000 square miles.

---

*Exercises.*—What is said of the Duke of Kent? How were the quit-rents adjusted? What is said of emigration, the governors, and responsible government? Describe the island of Newfoundland.

**3. Boundaries.**—It is bounded on the north by the Straits of Belle Isle (twelve miles wide); east and south, by the Atlantic Ocean; and west, by the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

#### PHYSICAL FEATURES, CLIMATE, AND NATURAL PRODUCTS.

**4. The Coast Line** is deeply serrated, being pierced by many fine bays and harbours. On the eastern Atlantic side, the chief are White Bay, Notre Dame, Exploits, Bonavista, Trinity, and Conception Bays; on the south, St. Mary's, Placentia, and Fortune Bays; and on the west, St. George's Bay.

**5. The Surface** is much diversified by mountains, rivers, and lakes. Mossy marshes and barren rocky ridges, however, prevail in the interior.

**6. Geology.**—The stratified rocks which occur along the coast line consist of the following formations: Coal, magnesian limestone, upper slate, lower slate, gneiss, and mica slate. The unstratified, or igneous, rock, consists of various kinds of trap, greenstone, serpentine, hypersthene, porphyry, sienite, and granite. Except in some very indistinct vegetable impressions in the coal formation, no organic remains have yet been found. Nearly the whole peninsula of Avalon is composed of the lower slate formation. Granite boulders, of large size, are found in all directions. Nearly all the hill ranges, lakes, and bays, lie north and south in the island. In this direction, too, are found the coal-beds. They are evidently a prolongation of the coal strata of Nova Scotia and Cape Breton. Two mountain ranges run parallel to the west coast.

**7. Lakes.**—The principal are the Grand Pond, Victoria, or Red Indian Pond, George IV., Bathurst, Jameson's, and Terra Nevis. There are numerous other small lakes, or ponds, as they are called. Fresh water covers nearly one-third of the island.

**8. Grand Pond.**—This is the largest lake in the island. It is near the west coast, and is 60 miles long and 8 miles wide. There is a large island at the southern end, 20 miles long, by 4 or 5 miles wide.

**9. Victoria Lake, or Red Indian Pond,** is 30 miles east of Grand Pond, and is parallel to it. Its length is 30, and its width 5 or 6 miles. It is somewhat triangular in shape. The western shore is curved the entire length; the southern shore is about 20 miles long. It communicates with George IV., Wilmot, and Bathurst Lakes.

**10. The Rivers** are unimportant. The principal are: Exploits, Great Rattling, Gander Bay, and Terra Nevis rivers, running north-east; and the Humber river, running south-west.

**11. Islands.**—Belle Isles (north and

south), New World, and Fogo, on the north and south; and St. Pierre and Miquelon (belonging to France), on the south coast; Belle Isle, north, which lies between Newfoundland and Labrador, gives the name to the straits which divide these countries.

**11. The Strait of Belle Isle** is the northern outlet of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, between the coasts of Newfoundland and Labrador. It is 80 miles long, and 12 wide. Its navigation was considered dangerous; but the Canadian Government have erected a light-house on Belle Isle and one on the Labrador coast. It is now the route of the Canadian ocean steamers.

**12. Peninsulas.**—St. George's, on the west coast; and Avalon, which forms the south-eastern portion of the Island,—from which it is nearly severed by Trinity and Placentia bays. This peninsula was originally settled by Sir George Calvert (Lord Baltimore) in 1623. It was named by him after Avalon, or Glastonbury, where Christianity was first preached in Britain.

**14. Capes.**—Cape Race, the extreme

*Exercises.*—Give the boundaries of the island of Newfoundland. Describe the coast line, surface, geology, lakes, rivers, islands, straits, peninsulas, and capes.



end of Avalon peninsula; the first and last land seen on the voyage to and from England; Bona Vista, the first land seen by Cabot in 1497; St. Francis, Breakheart Point, Freels, St. John, Partridge, St. Anthony, Bauld, Norman, Ferrol Point, Riel Point, St. Gregory, St. George, Anguille, Ray, La Hune, Point May, Corbin Head, and Cape St. Mary's.

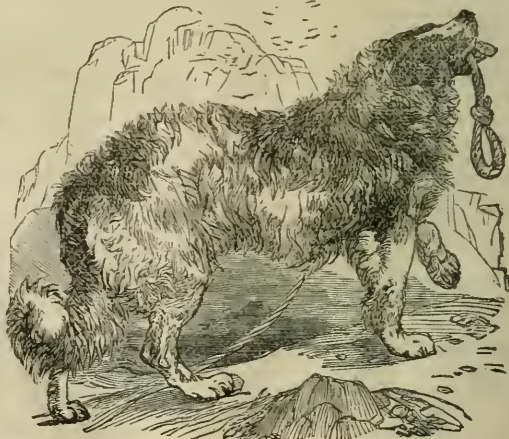
**15. The Banks of Newfoundland,** which stretch along the eastern and southern coast of the island, are extensive submarine elevations, 600 or 700 miles long, and of various widths. The depth of water varies from 15 to 80 fathoms. The banks are at the point of junction of the Arctic current from Baffin's Bay and the celebrated Gulf Stream (see page 74), and have been made up of sand and the *debris* of earth, stones, and gravel, carried down on icebergs, by the northern polar current, from the Arctic regions and Baffin's Bay. These icebergs, meeting the warmer waters of the Gulf Stream, are here melted, and the *debris* deposited. This process, going on for ages, has accumulated the vast banks of sand which are now found off the coast. The deep sea soundings confirm this view of the formation of the banks. Coming from the north, the bottom of the sea is shelving; but suddenly, after passing the outer ledge, the depth of water increases by an almost precipitous descent of several thousand feet. Besides the Grand Bank, there are several others. Their names are: the Outer Bank, to the east; and the Green, Mizen, Porpoise, and Banquereau banks, to the west.

**16. The Climate,** though severe, is healthy. Winter is

stormy, and is later than in Canada. January and February are the coldest months. Snow does not lie long on the ground. Spring is late, and summer is short and warm. In May and June, dense fogs prevail on the Banks; but they are not injurious to health. Thunder and lightning are rare. The longevity of the inhabitants is remarkable.

**17. Minerals.**—Coal is found south of St. George's Bay and north of the Great Pond, as they lie in the same north-easterly direction. Gypsum, copper, silver, and iron are also found. The Telegraph Company work a valuable lead mine. The iron pyrites found on the coast by the first explorers was mistaken for gold, and caused great disappointment when its true value was known. Salt springs are frequent on the west coast.

**18. Vegetable Products.**—Wheat is not a profitable crop, owing to the cool and moist climate, and the fogs prevailing from the eastward. For the same reason, green



THE NEWFOUNDLAND DOG (*Canis familiaris*.)

*Exercises.*—Describe the formations of the "Banks" off the coast. What is said of the climate? What are the minerals, and vegetable products, and the flowers and shrubs of Newfoundland?

crops are productive. Potatoes, garden vegetables, and fruit grow in abundance.

**19. Flowers and Shrubs.**—The Guelder and two other kinds of roses and the pitcher plant are natives of the province. The iris, pansy, lily of the valley, &c., grow in profusion, besides a variety of recumbent and trailing evergreens, shrubs, &c.

**20. Animals.**—The celebrated Newfoundland dog is a native of the island; and though it has degenerated in some places, fine specimens may still be found at the north. There are two kinds: the short wiry-haired Labrador dog, and the long curly haired Newfoundland species. The

deer, wolf, fox, and other animals exist in numbers. Land birds are numerous in the interior, and water birds on the coast. The seal, whale, grampus, and porpoise abound; but the sea-horse, like the auk or penguin, has been nearly annihilated.

**21. Fish** is the chief source of the wealth and importance of Newfoundland, almost every variety of which frequents the coast. The cod is the staple fish, and abounds on the adjacent banks; herring, salmon, mullet, and capelin, are also abundant. Mackerel, once abundant, has, in 1858, again returned in great numbers, after 20 year's absence.



#### CIVIL DIVISIONS, POPULATION, RELIGION, AND EDUCATION.

**22. Districts.**—The island is divided into nine electoral districts as follows: (1) St. Johns, two divisions, east and west; (2) Conception Bay, five divisions: Harbour Grace, Carbonear, Bay de Verds, Port de Grace, and Harbour Main; (3) Trinity Bay; (4) Bonavista Bay; (5) Fogo and Twillingate; (6) Ferryland; (7) Placentia and St. Marys; (8) Burin; and (9) Fortune Bay. There is but one city, St. Johns, the capital; and five towns: Harbour Grace, Carbonear, Brigns, Port de Grace, and Placentia, all in the peninsula of Avalon.

**23. St. Johns** is the most eastern seaport in North America, and the capital of Newfoundland. The harbour is excellent. It is enclosed by two mountains, between which is the entrance, or "narrows," defended by numerous batteries. The spring tides rise five feet. The city is situated on an acclivity. The principal street is a mile long. The chief public edifices are the Roman Catholic and Protestant Episcopal Cathedrals, and other churches; the government house, chambers of the Legislature, and Lunatic Asylum. The city is lighted with gas and well supplied with water. It has several times suffered severely from fire.

The trade consists in the exchange of fish and oil for the commodities of various countries, and the supplying of the fishermen with necessary articles. A submarine telegraph connects the city with the American continent, *via* Cape Breton; and it is proposed to lay down another to Valentia, in Ireland, 1,640 geographical miles distant.

**24. The Population** in 1857 was 119,304; besides 3,334 British subjects residing on the French shore from Cape Ray to Cape John. The original settlers were chiefly from Ireland, and the islands in the British Channel, France, &c.

**25. In Religion** the utmost toleration prevails. The numbers in 1857 were: 55,309 Roman Catholics; 42,638 Church of England; 20,144 Methodists; 822 Presbyterians; and 44 Baptists, &c.

**26. Education.**—Elementary schools are established in every district in the island; of these there are about 250, attended by 15,000 pupils; besides nearly 50 Madras and other schools, a Normal, and ten or twelve grammar schools and academies. The expenditure for elementary education, in 1857, was \$50,250; and for academies, \$8,750.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the animals of the island? Which is the staple fish? Give the civil divisions and population. What is said of religion and education?

## SUBMARINE TELEGRAPHS, FISHERIES, AND COMMERCE.

**27. Submarine Telegraph.**—Newfoundland is destined to be famous as being the connecting point for the submarine telegraph between Europe and America. Already the island is connected by telegraph with the adjoining continent. The further distance from St. Johns to Valentia, in Ireland, is 1,900 English miles. Soundings have been taken every 30 miles of this distance; and over an area of 1,300 miles, the bed of the Atlantic was found to be a soft and almost unbroken level, or telegraphic plateau, of calcareous rock, covered with a layer of microscopic tropical shells. The greatest depth sounded near the middle of the ocean was more than three miles.

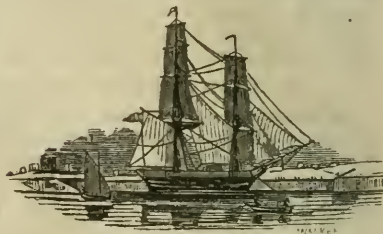
**28. The Submarine Cables** are made of twisted-copper wire, coated with gutta percha, and bound with iron-wire. Seven copper-wires are thus twisted into a single cord, and that is insulated and surrounded with spun yarn soaked in tar and grease. Around this rope is afterwards twisted a number of stout iron-wires, coated with zinc, or galvanised, so as to preserve them from rust. The cable is then ready for laying, which is done by steamers. The weight of cables varies from 1 to 7 tons per mile: that between Newfoundland and Ireland is 18 cwt. per mile.

**29. Submarine Connections.**—Already Ireland is connected with England and Scotland by submarine telegraph; England with France, Belgium, and Holland; thus the connection between the continents of Europe and America will be complete.

**30. The Fisheries** of Newfoundland are prosecuted by the inhabitants of the island, and, under treaty arrangements, by the French and Americans off the coast. The French occupy two islands to the south of Newfoundland, St. Pierre and Miquelon, and have a concurrent right of fishing on the Newfoundland coast, from Cape Ray

round by the westward and northward to Cape John. The products of the fisheries include the various kinds of fish, cod and seal, and oil and seal skins. The total value of exports from the island in 1855, of these products of the sea, was \$6,040,000. The value of the French and American fisheries probably amounted to a nearly equal sum.

**31. The Commerce** of the island consists in the exchange of its fish, &c., for the



produce of other countries. There are about 1,000 vessels annually engaged in this trade. In addition, about 400 vessels usually engage in the spring seal fishery, and about 15,000 of all sizes in the summer cod and other fisheries.

**32. Imports and Exports.**—The total value of the exports from the island in 1857, including \$1,250,000 for fish and furs from Labrador, was \$8,250,000. The value of the imports for the same year was \$7,100,000. The balance of trade is made up in freights, and imports for the prosecution of the fisheries. The chief export trade is with Great Britain, the Colonies, Spain, Italy, the West Indies, and the United States. One year after the assent to the American reciprocity treaty of 1854 by the legislature of the island, the exports to the United States increased four-fold. Newfoundland has also entered into a similar commercial arrangement with Canada, &c.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the telegraph? How are submarine telegraph cables made? What are the more noted submarine telegraph connections? What is said of the fisheries, commerce, &c.?



## REVENUE AND CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

**33. The Revenue and Expenditure** are about half a million of dollars. In 1854, the revenue was \$405,000.

**34. The Executive Government** consists of a governor, and a responsible cabinet of seven members, who must hold seats in either house of the legislature as in Canada, &c. The Governor-in-Chief of the Island is independent of the governor General of British North America.

**35. The Legislature** consists of the Governor, a Legislative Council of 13 members appointed by the Crown, and an elective House of Assembly of 30 members.

**36. The Judiciary** consists of a Chief Justice of the Supreme and Circuit Courts, and two puisné judges. There are also the Circuit Courts, and the Session Courts, presided over by magistrates at St. Johns, and at each outpost.

## XVIII. HISTORY OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

**1. The Red Indians.**—This Algonquin tribe, called Bœothic, or Bethuck, with some Esquimo Indians, occupied the Island of Newfoundland when Sebastian Cabot first visited it. Their food then was raw flesh. They resided chiefly in the vicinity of the Exploits River, but are now extinct. They were ruthlessly exterminated by the Micmac Indians and the whites, who waged perpetual warfare against them. From having painted their persons with the red ochre found on the island, they received the name of "Red Indians." Their mode of capturing deer was ingenious. They cut down trees on either banks of the river, so as to form a brush fence, leaving openings, at intervals, through which the deer must pass—in doing which, these unsuspecting animals became an easy prey to the hunter. There are now very few Indians, if any, on the Island.

**2. Northern Discovery.**—It is supposed that Newfoundland, or Helluland, was originally discovered by Biarne, son of Heriulf Bardson, a follower of Eric the Red, Earl of Norway, who, in the year 986

emigrated from Iceland to Greenland. Leif, son of the Earl, is said to have made a second visit in the year 1000, and to have gone as far south as Vinland (Massachusetts), a place of grapes, Thorwald, brother of Lief, reached Winland in 1002, but, returning home, fell in with the Skrelling, or Esquimo Indians, and was killed. His brother Thorstein sought to recover his body, but failed. In 1004, Thorfinn, a person of illustrious lineage, is also said to have made a voyage to Helluland, Markland (Nova Scotia), and Vinland. These statements are disputed; but they are supported by various authorities.



RED INDIAN HUNTER.

**3. Cabot's Discovery.**—

In May, 1497, King Henry VIII. despatched John Cabot and his sons on a voyage of discovery to the west. On the 24th June, they reached a point on the American coast, either Labrador or, more probably, Newfoundland, as they gave the name of Prima Vista to the island which they discovered. Owing to the quantities of cod-fish on the coast they called the place Bac-ca-la-os (the Indian

*Exercises.*—What is said of the revenue, civil government, and the Red Indians? What are the theories in regard to early northern discovery and Cabot's discovery?



name for cod-fish)—a name still given to a small Island off the northern point of the Avalon peninsula, and which would seem to indicate the precise spot "first seen" by the Cabots. In 1498, Sebastian Cabot, who became so celebrated a navigator, again visited the island, and sailed as far north as Hudson's Bay.

#### 4. Cortereal's Visit.—

In 1500, Gaspar Cortereal, a Portuguese, visited the island. He gave to Conception Bay and Portugal Cove the names they still bear.

#### 5. First Fisheries.—

Cortereal's account of the abundance of fish on the banks, induced the Portuguese, in 1502, to establish the fisheries, which have since become so famous and productive. The French, Spaniards, and English soon followed; and in 1817, there were 50 vessels engaged in the enterprise. The Portuguese soon retired, leaving the fisheries chiefly in the hands of the French and English.

**6. Verazzani's Visit.**—In 1525, John Verazzani visited the island, and carefully examined 2,000 miles of the American coast. Upon his examination and report, the French laid claim to the whole country, under the name of New France.

**7. Cartier's Visit.**—In 1534, Jacques Cartier reached the island of Newfoundland, and so pleased was he with the scenery of the cape he first saw, that he called it "Bonavista,"—a name it still



SEBASTIAN CABOT.

bears. Sailing northwards, he passed through the Strait of Belle Isle into the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

**8. Gilbert's Expedition.**—In 1540, London, Bristol, and other English ports, actively engaged in the Newfoundland fisheries; and in 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert landed, after a slight opposition, at St. John's, and took formal possession of the island in the name of Queen Elizabeth. Collecting the masters and merchants, he read

*Exercises.*—When did Cortereal visit the island, and what was the result? What is said of Verazzani's and Cartier's visits, and of Gilbert's expedition? Who was Sebastian Cabot?

his commission, and afterwards promulgated several laws. He was shortly afterwards shipwrecked. In 1585, Sir Bernard Drake made a voyage to Newfoundland, and captured some Portuguese ships laden with fish, oil, and furs.

**9. Guy's Expedition.**—In 1610, James I. granted to Lord Bacon and forty others, a patent to colonize the island. They sent John Guy, from Bristol, who established a colony at Conception Bay. He undertook a survey of the coast, and held friendly intercourse with the Red Indians; but sickness compelled Guy and some of the party to return to England.

**10. Whitbourn's Admiralty Courts.**—In 1614, permanent dwelling-houses were first erected in Newfoundland; and in 1615, Capt. Whitbourn was despatched to the island, by the Admiralty, to hold courts, empanel juries, and settle fishery disputes. Whitbourn also planted a Welsh colony at Cambriol, now called Little Britain.

**11. Baltimore's Colony.**—In 1624 Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, while Secretary of State, obtained letters patent from James I. granting him the entire peninsula formed by the Bays of Placentia and Trinity. This he erected into a province, under the name of Avalon—the ancient name of Glastonbury, in England—and appointed Capt. Wynn local governor, who fixed his residence at Ferryland. Lord Baltimore also resided there for some time; but finding the soil and climate unfavourable, he, in 1643, under a patent from Charles I. founded the colony of Maryland, of which Baltimore is now the capital, and abandoned his estate in Newfoundland. In 1754, his heirs claimed the peninsula, but the claim was disallowed.

**12. Regular Government.**—In 1633, Charles I. gave directions for the introduction of a more regular system of government, in regard to the fisheries, crime, &c.

"Fishing Admirals," or certain masters of fishing vessels, were appointed to execute the law; but ignorance and partiality generally characterized their decisions.

**13. French Tribute.**—In 1626, the French established a colony at Placentia, which led to many disputes; and in 1634, rather than relinquish the fisheries, they agreed to pay five per cent. on all fish taken, for the privilege of fishing. The impost continued for forty years.

**14. Kertk's Settlement.**—In 1654, Sir David Kertk obtained a grant, and established a settlement. In 1663, there were 15 British settlements, and about 400 families on the island. They would have rapidly increased, but for the cruel policy of those who monopolized the fisheries.

**15. Islanders Deported.**—Orders were even sent out to break up the settlements and remove the islanders; but Sir John Berry, the governor, a humane man, remonstrated; and in 1676, the King ordered that the removals should cease. Further emigration was, however, forbidden.

**16. The War of 1692-8.**—The recriminations between the rival colonies at length resulted in a determination on the part of England and France to gain entire possession of the island and its fisheries. Placentia was attacked in 1792; but the French Governor made a spirited and successful defence. In retaliation, the French made two attacks upon St. John, in 1696, and burned it to the ground. All the other British settlements were destroyed, except those at Bonavista and Carbonear, which made a successful resistance. An attempt was made to restrain the invaders. The peace of Ryswick ended the war for a time.

**17. The War of the Succession** revived hostilities in Newfoundland. In 1702, Queen Anne sent out Sir John Leake, who made a successful attack upon the French settlements, and captured a number of ves-

*Exercises.*—What is said of Guy's expedition—Whitbourn's admiralty courts—Lord Baltimore's colony—regular government—French tribute—Kertk's settlement—deportation of islanders, &c.?

sels. In 1703, Admiral Graydon failed in his attacks upon the French. In 1705-8, Placentia having been reinforced from Canada, and further aid having arrived, the French retaliated with such vigor, that with occasional reverses, they had acquired in 1708, almost entire possession of the island. The brave fishermen of Carbonear alone held out. The French held possession until 1713, when, by the Treaty of Utrecht, Louis XIV. ceded Newfoundland to England, retaining only the islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon off the southern coast.

**18. Separate Province.**—In 1729, Newfoundland was separated from the government of Nova Scotia and made a separate province. Captain Osborne was appointed the first governor under the new constitution. He divided the island into districts, and introduced several salutary reforms into the administration of the laws.

**19. Courts Established.**—In 1734, a Court of Oyer and Terminer was instituted; and in 1742, a Court of Admiralty; in 1789, a Court of Common Pleas; in 1792, a Supreme Court (both rendered permanent in 1808), and in 1811, a Surrogate Court in Labrador. Sessions Courts were also held in the island. In 1826, a royal charter reorganized the judiciary, divided the island into circuits, and authorized the Supreme Court to admit barristers and attorneys.

**20. War of 1756.**—So unprotected was the island left during this war, that in 1761 a merchant brig had to be equipped for defence; and in 1762, the French captured St. Johns, Carbonear, and Trinity. Lord Colville at once sailed from Halifax and recaptured them. The noble and patriotic conduct of Messrs. Carter and Garland, in provisioning, under great difficulties, the garrisons of Ferryland and Carbonear, and rendering other services, was appreciated and handsomely rewarded by the British Government. In 1763, the treaty of Paris again put an end to the war and its evils.

**21. Labrador Annexed.**—In 1763, the Labrador coast was politically annexed to Newfoundland. Cook the celebrated navigator, surveyed the coasts.

**22. Palliser's Act.**—In 1764, Sir Hugh Palliser was appointed governor. His administration was highly beneficial, and his maritime regulations were afterwards passed into a law. The navigation laws were, in 1765, extended to Newfoundland.

**23. American Treatment.**—In 1774, the Americans prohibited the exportation of food to Newfoundland, because the islanders would not aid their cause. By the greatest exertions, on the part of England, the inhabitants were, however, saved from starvation. Being acquainted with the coast, the American privateers also harassed the colonists and destroyed their property. By the treaty of 1783, peace was restored.

**24. Disasters.**—In 1775, the island was visited by a dreadful storm. The sea rose 20 feet; hundreds of vessels of all sizes were driven on shore, inland property was destroyed, and about 300 persons lost their lives. In 1816, St. Johns was nearly destroyed by fire; loss, \$500,000. In 1817, two other fires occurred in St. Johns, destroying property and provisions to the value of \$2,000,000. A great scarcity of food was the consequence. Many riots occurred. England sent relief, and the citizens of Boston freighted a ship with food for the sufferers, and thus almost wiped off the stain of 1774. In 1832 Harbour Grace was burned. In June, 1846, another destructive fire visited St. Johns; and in September, a furious hurricane ravaged the coast. Much property and many lives were lost.

**25. War again.**—In 1792, the French republic declared war against England, and before it terminated, the United States also declared war in 1812. In 1796, the town at the Baye des Boules (Guelder Rose Bay, misnamed the Bay of Bulls) was destroyed by the French Admiral. The war was

*Exercises.*—When was Newfoundland made a separate Province, and Courts established? What is said of the wars of 1769—of Labrador—Palliser—American treatment—disasters—and war again?



otherwise advantageous to the trade of Newfoundland. It was terminated in 1814, when treaties of peace were signed. Depression in trade immediately followed; but it revived again in 1818.

**26. Social Progress.**—In 1803, Sunday schools were introduced and benevolent societies established. In 1807, a newspaper was issued, now there are 9; in 1808, volunteer militia were enrolled; in 1810, efforts were made to establish friendly relations with the native tribes, but fear on their part prevented it; in 1822, the Newfoundland and British North American School Society established “free” schools; in 1828 the St. Johns roads were greatly improved; in 1830, a court-house and the government house were erected; in 1836, a banking house was established; in 1839, a geological survey was undertaken; the Roman Catholic cathedral was commenced in 1841, and the Protestant Episcopal cathedral in 1843; in 1845, gas light was first used in the island, and grammar schools established; in 1826 an act required the houses on two principal streets, parallel to the harbour, to be built of brick or stone; in 1847, St. Johns was supplied with water, agriculture encouraged, a public library and mechanics’ institutes founded. Various improvements

have rapidly followed, and Newfoundland now enjoys peace and prosperity.

**27. Political Progress.**—In 1832, a Legislative Council of 9, and a representative Assembly of 15 members were granted, and the island divided into nine electoral districts; in 1843, the assembly was incorporated with the council, and an amalgamated assembly of 25 members instituted; in 1848, the union was dissolved, and the two houses met separately; in 1854, the electoral districts were re-arranged and the number of members of the assembly increased to 30; the Executive and Legislative Councils were also separated in 1854, and responsible government fully established. Thus has Newfoundland happily reached a period in her history that, under the paternal and powerful protection of Great Britain, she may enjoy the highest political and social prosperity. In communicating to the Governor of Newfoundland, the articles of the fishery convention with France in 1857, the Imperial Government nobly and distinctly laid down the important principle, that no changes affecting the rights and privileges of the colonists would be made without the free concurrence of their local legislature. This principle applies to all the colonies alike.

#### GOVERNORS OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

Newfoundland is the nearest to England of the North American provinces, as well as the oldest of all her colonies. Many distinguished British naval captains have, from time to time, held the office of governor of the islands, as follows:—

Captain Osborne.....	1729	Captain Hon. J. Byron.....	1769	Admiral Holloway.....	1807
Captain Clinton.....	1729	Commodore Molyneux.....	1772	Admiral Sir J. Duckworth.....	1810
Captain Vanburgh.....	1737	Commodore Duif.....	1775	Admiral Sir J. Keats.....	1813
Captain Lord J. Graham.....	1740	Admiral Montague.....	1776	Admiral Pickmore.....	1817
Captain Hon. J. Byng.....	1741	Admiral Edwards.....	1779	Admiral Sir C. Hamilton.....	1818
Captain Sir C. Hardy.....	1744	Admiral Campbell.....	1782	Captain Sir C. Cochrane.....	1825
Captain Rodney.....	1749	Admiral Elliott.....	1786	Captain Prescott.....	1834
Captain Drake.....	1750	Admiral Milbanke.....	1789	General Sir J. Harvey.....	1841
Captain Bonfoy.....	1753	Admiral Kings.....	1793	Hon. F. W. A. Bruce.....	1846
Captain Dorrit.....	1755	Admiral Sir J. Wallace.....	1794	Colonel Sir J. G. le Mar-	
Captain Edwards.....	1757	Admiral Waldegrave.....	1797	chant.....	1847
Captain Webb.....	1760	Admiral Pole.....	1800	Hon. K. B. Hamilton.....	1852
Captain Groves.....	1761	Admiral Gambier.....	1802	Hon. C. H. Darling.....	1855
Captain Palliser.....	1764	Admiral Sir E. Gower.....	1804	Sir Alexander Bannerman.....	1857

*Exercises.*—Trace the social and political progress of the Province. Who were the Governors of Newfoundland?



## XIX. LABRADOR PENINSULA.

**1. Position and Area.**—This extensive peninsula is the most easterly part of British America. Its area is about 450,000 square miles.

**2. Boundaries.**—It is bounded on the north by Hudson's Strait; on the east by the Atlantic Ocean: on the south by the Strait of Belleisle and the Gulf and River St. Lawrence; and on the west by Canada and James and Hudson's Bays.

**3. The Surface** gradually rises as it recedes from the coast. Near the centre, a range, called the Wolehish Mountains, forms a water-shed for the rivers.

**4. Geology.**—The prevailing rocks on the coast are granite, gneiss, and mica slate. Above these, in some parts is a bed of old red sandstone, followed by secondary limestone. Towards the interior, the secondary formations disappear, and the primary become predominant.

**5. Soil and Timber, &c.**—In some of the valleys, where the soil is sandy, juniper, birch, and poplar are found. Near the coast, moss and stunted shrubs prevail.

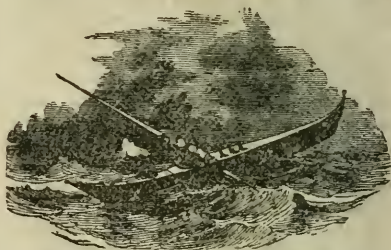
**6. Rivers.**—The principal rivers are: The East Main, or Stude, flowing westward to St. James' Bay; the Great and Little Whale Rivers, flowing westward to Hudson's Bay; the Kee-nog-an-is-see and Kok-so-ak, which, united, flow northward to South Bay, Hudson's Straits; and the Meschic-ke-mau, or North-West River, flowing eastward to the Strait of Belleisle.

**7. The Lakes** are numerous; almost every river forming several, by expanding in its course. The chief are: Clear Water, in the west; Mis-tas-chin-nie, in the south; and Meschickemau, in the east.

**8. The Climate and Products.**—The climate is excessively severe. It is a region of almost perpetual snow, from September until June. Cereals will not ripen; but barley, cut green, makes good fodder. Po-

tatoes and other vegetables do well in some seasons, in favourable spots.

**9. The Inhabitants** on the coast are chiefly Eskimo Indians, who subsist by fishing and hunting. In the interior are



THE ESKIMO, IN HIS KATAK, SEAL HUNTING. the Nas-co-pi, or Scoffi, and the She-sha-tapush, branches of the Cree Indians, and part of the Algonquin family. Besides the fishermen who frequent the coast, the population of Labrador is estimated at 5,000.

**10. Settlements.**—The chief European settlements on the east coast are Fortean and Bradore Bays, Ance la Blanc; and the Moravian settlements of Nain, Okbak, Hopedale, and Hebron. The Hudson's Bay Company have also several stations.

**11. Fisheries and Commerce.**—The principal articles of commerce are whale and seal oil and skins, fish, furs, and birds' eggs. About 18,000 seals are annually taken. The annual value of the fish and oil, &c., taken, is estimated at \$4,000,000. The exports are chiefly shipped from Newfoundland. Those for 1855 were valued at \$1,250,000, including \$50,000 worth of furs.

**12. History.**—The peninsula was dis-

*Exercises.*—Describe the Labrador peninsula. What is said of the surface, geology, soil, timber, rivers, lakes, climate, products, inhabitants, settlements, fisheries, commerce, &c., of Labrador

covered by Cabot, in 1496, and visited by Hudson, in 1610. By the Spaniards it was called Labrador, or "Cultivable Land," to distinguish it from Gron, or Green Land. It is also said to derive its name from the "good labour," or faithful services of its inhabitants. It also received the name of Helluland, from the Scandinavian Northmen, who probably visited the coast about

the year 1000. In 1763, the coast of Labrador was annexed to the government of Newfoundland. It was afterwards separated from it, but, in 1808, re-annexed; and in 1811, an Imperial act was passed, authorising the holding of Surrogate Courts on the Labrador coast. The whole of the interior, to the shores of Hudson's Bay, is claimed by the Hudson's Bay Company.

## XX. HUDSON'S BAY TERRITORY.

**1. Position and Extent.**—This vast territory, stretching across the northern portion of British America, includes nominally the following areas: I. "Rupert's Land," embracing (as granted by the charter of Charles II. in 1670) all the country watered by rivers falling into Hudson's Bay. II. The "Indian Territories," leased in 1821, and including indefinite areas or sections drained by the Mackenzie, Coppermine, Athabasca, Saskatchewan and Red Rivers, &c., extending from the sources of these rivers to the Frozen Ocean; and from the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific Ocean. III. The whole of British Columbia and Vancouver's Island.

**2. Title.**—The title to Rupert's Land is based, 1st. Upon the charter of Charles II.; 2nd. Upon the act of 1690, confirming the charter for seven years only; and, 3rd. Upon general and incidental references to the Company's territories, in various treaties and acts of Parliament. To the Indian territories, the title is based upon a grant from the Crown, of the exclusive right to

trade with Indians in those territories, for twenty-one years, from 1838. To Vancouver's Island, the title is conditional that the Company colonise it. The island may be repurchased by the Crown, in 1859, on the expiration of the Company's present lease of the Indian territories. This it is proposed also to annex, with the Red River and Saskatchewan districts, to Canada.

### HUDSON'S BAY SECTION.

**3. Extent.**—This portion of the Hudson's Bay Territory includes the whole of the country watered by rivers flowing into the Hudson's Bay. The eastern or Labrador section has been already described. (p. 101.)

**4. The River System** includes the rivers to the east (*see Labrador*), south and west of Hudson's Bay and its outlets. They are separated from the other great rivers of British North America by a water shed or elevated chain running far inland, almost

parallel to the south and west shores of the Bay itself. The principal ones are as follows: the Chesterfield, Churchill, Saskatchewan, the Severn, and the Albany.

**5. The Chesterfield** is the most northern, and is a long inlet, fed by lakes, &c.

**6. The Churchill** rises in the slope far east of the Rocky Mountains, under the name of Beaver River; flows north-eastwards, receives the waters of the Methy and La Crosse Lakes, takes thence the name of

*Exercises.*—What are the position and extent of the Hudson's Bay territory? What is the nature of the title to it? Describe the Hudson's Bay section, its extent and river system.

Missinipi, is again augmented by the waters of Deer Lake, the southern outflow of Wollaston Lake, and thence bears the name of Churchill River to Hudson's Bay.

**7. The Sas-katch-e-wan**, (or Nelson), the largest river entering Hudson's Bay, rises in the Rocky Mountains, where its northern branch is fed by Mount Hooker. Joined by the southern branch, about 500 miles from its source, the united river flows into Lake Winnipeg, and, issuing thence,

under the name of the Nelson River, it keeps north-eastwards to Hudson's Bay. It is 1,300 miles in length, and drains an area of 368,000 square miles. Sas-katch-e-wan means the swift current.

**8. The Severn** falls into Hudson's Bay. It flows north eastward, from a source near lake Winnipeg, if not from the lake itself.

**9. The Albany** has its source in Lake St. Joseph, in latitude  $51^{\circ}$ , and flows eastward nearly 400 miles to James Bay.

#### HUDSON'S BAY AND TRIBUTARY LAKES.

**10. Hudson's Bay** is an extensive mediterranean sea connected with the northern Atlantic Ocean by the Hudson's Strait. The southern prolongation is called James' Bay, from which the distance to Repulse Bay, in the north, is 1,000 miles. Its greatest width is 500 miles; depth, in the middle of the Bay, 150 fathoms. The coasts, except at the south-west, are high, rocky, and rugged. It was discovered by Henry Hudson, in 1610, who perished on its shore.

**11. The Lakes.**—Winnipeg is about 240 miles long, and from 5 to 50 miles wide. Directly westward, and parallel to it, are the two lakes, Winnipegosis and Manitobah, which, together, are nearly of the same extent as Winnipeg. The Lake of the Woods is a fine sheet of water, 68 miles long, and from 15 to 25 miles wide. It is dotted over with beautiful islands. The other lakes to the south are St. Joseph, Sal and Cod; and to the north, Deer and Wollaston.

#### RED RIVER AND SAS-KATCH-E-WAN SECTION.

**12. Extent.**—This section includes the valleys of the Assiniboine, Saskatchewan, (2 branches,) Beaver, (Churchill,) Peace and Athabasca rivers. It also includes the 250 miles of the navigable part of the Red River, Lake Winnipeg, &c. Its length, from the Lake of the Woods westward to the rocky mountains is 900 miles, and its breadth, from the United States boundary  $49^{\circ}$  north latitude to the mouth of the Peace River, Lake Athabasca, 700 miles. It includes an area of 500,000 square miles: and is equal to France and Austria. Red River was settled by Lord Selkirk, in 1811.

**13. Climate.**—At the western part the winters are comparatively short and mild, similar to those at Chicago. Southward the climate does not differ much from that of Canada. To the north it is colder.

**14. Products.**—Prairies abound with timber on the river banks, especially on the Upper Saskatchewan. At the base of the Rocky Mountains, immense coal fields exist. It is also rich in other minerals. At the south and east the soil is very good, and grain and vegetables are easily cultivated. The principal animals are the beaver, fox, wolf, moose, red deer, elk, bear, and buffalo.

#### MACKENZIE RIVER SECTION.

**15. Extent, &c.**—This section extends along the Mackenzie River from the Arctic Sea, near Russian America, to the interior

waters of the Great Bear, Great Slave and Athabasca lakes. Its area is about 442,000 square miles. Forests and coal abound.

*Exercises.*—Describe Hudson's Bay and the tributary lakes: also the Red River, Saskatchewan and Mackenzie River sections,—their extent, climate, and products.



**46. The Mackenzie River** is supposed to be 2,500 miles long. It rises in Mount Brown, near the sources of the Columbia River, and under the name of the Athabasca empties itself into the lake of that name. The Peace River also flows into this lake. Under the name of Slave River, it discharges the western waters of Lake Athabasca into Great Slave Lake, and is here a mile wide. Emerging at the S.W. extremity of this lake, it takes the name of Mackenzie River, and flows northwards to latitude  $59^{\circ}$  where it receives the waters of Great Bear Lake, thence to the Arctic Sea, which it enters by several mouths. Its other tributaries are Hay and Turn-again rivers. The Mackenzie flows through a vast plain, and is said to be generally navigable except at the base of the Rocky Mountains where it is interrupted by rapids.

Forts Simpson, Norman, and Good Hope are on its banks. It was discovered and navigated by Sir Alex. Mackenzie in 1789. Fish, alum, salt, and mineral-tar abound.

**17. The Chief Lakes** in this section are the Great Bear, Great Slave, and the Athabasca. The Great Bear Lake lies under the constellation of the Great Bear, hence its name. Its area is 14,000 square miles. It is the most northern lake in America, and is very irregular in shape. Its waters are transparent. Great Slave Lake is 300 miles long, by 50 broad. It is irregular in shape, and its northern shores precipitous and rugged. It is named from the Slave Indians. Aylmer Lake and the Coppermine River (200 miles long) are north-east of this lake. Athabasca Lake is 230 miles long, by 220 wide. It discharges by two outlets, an eastern and western.

#### BRITISH COLUMBIA.

**18. Extent.**—This new colony extends from the Arctic Sea to the United States boundary ( $40^{\circ}$  N. latitude), and lies between the two ranges of the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean.

**19. The Rocky Mountains** proper, extend from the Arctic Sea to South America (where they are called the Andes), and are 3000 miles long. In British America they are sometimes called the Chip-pe-way-an Mountains. In Mexico they are called the Cordilleras. The parallel ranges in British Columbia are the Blue and the Cascade Mountains. The principal peaks are Mounts Brown and Hooker, the former 16,900 feet and the latter 15,690, above the sea-level. Between these two peaks there is a pass called the At-ha-bas-ca portage. Its summit is elevated 7,300 feet.

**20. Rivers.**—The Fraser is the principal river. It is 500 miles long, and falls into the Gulf of Georgia, opposite Vancouver's Island, six miles north of the United States boundary line, where it is a mile wide. The northern branch of the Columbia River, which takes its rise near Mounts Tom and Hooker, runs parallel to the Fraser River, and is joined by Flatbow River at the United States boundary-line. The Columbia is the largest river on the Pacific coast. Its length is 1200 miles. New Westminster, on the Fraser River, is the capital.

#### VANCOUVER'S ISLAND.

**12. Situation and Extent.**—This island, situate on the Pacific coast, is 278 miles long, and 50 or 60 miles wide. It is separated from the New Caledonia by the Gulf of Georgia and Queen Charlotte Sound; and from Washington territory (United States) by the Straits of Juan-de-Fuca.

**22. The Surface** is marked by interesting mountain ranges and extensive prairies. Nimkis is the principal river.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the Mackenzie river and the chief lakes? Describe the New Caledonia and Vancouver's Island sections—their extent, climate, physical features, and natural products.



The harbours are; Victoria, or Camosack, and Nootka-Sound. There are also numerous small Islands and promontories.

**23. The Climate** is considered very fine. There is little frost, and vegetation begins in February. The summer is hot, the autumn dry, and the winter stormy; fogs prevail, and rains fall heavily.

**24. Natural Products**—The agricultural capabilities of the island are very

great. The principal products, in addition to those of the soil, are furs, obtained chiefly from the beaver, racoon, land and sea otter. Fish of the most valuable kind abound on the coast. Gold and coal of an excellent quality, are also found in large quantities.

Vancouver's Island and British Columbia were in 1858 created into a British Colony under one government. Victoria on the island is the Capital.

## XXI. HISTORY OF THE HUDSON'S BAY TERRITORY.

**1. Discovery.**—The Hudson's Bay (or Hudson's Sea) is said to have been reached by Sebastian Cabot, in 1517. In 1523-4, Verazzani sailed up the coast as far as Davis' Straits,—which were reached by Davis, in 1585. Various other English navigators sailed northwards, in quest of a north-west passage to India; but it was not until 1610 that Henry Hudson reached the Straits and Bay now bearing his name.

**2. Other Voyages.**—Button, an English navigator, visited the Bay in 1612; Bylot and Baffin, in 1615; and Fox and James, in 1631. Baffin and James' Bays were traced out and examined by these navigators, and received their names.

**3. The Connection with Canada** was maintained by canoe, along the Saguenay river, and thence overland to the Bay, by the Quebec Fur Company, established by Cardinal Richelieu, in 1627. Tadousac, at the mouth of the river, was their chief trading post in Canada. (*See page 51, § 7.*)

**4. English Trade.**—The treaty of St. Germain, in 1632, confirmed the whole of the Hudson's Bay territory to France; and De Grozelier and Radisson, two French Canadians, visited it: but having failed to induce their own governments to promote trade in it, they went to England. Prince Rupert entered warmly into their scheme, and despatched them on a trading voyage.

**5. Charter to the Hudson's Bay Company.**—They reached Nemisco, now called Rupert River, and their report being very favourable, Charles II. was induced (though, by the St. Germain's Treaty, he

had relinquished his claim to the territory) to grant Prince Rupert and others a charter for traffic, in furs and peltry, in those extensive regions, then called Rupert's Land. This was the origin of the famous Hudson's Bay Company's charter, in 1670. This charter; was, in 1690, confirmed by an act of the British Parliament, for seven years, but has never since been renewed.

**6. French and English Conflicts** in the territory were the consequences of this charter; and Chevalier de Troyes was despatched with troops from Quebec, and, in 1686, succeeded in capturing the principal forts of the company. At the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, and even up to 1713, the company had only Fort Albany left.

**7. Cession to England.**—In 1713, however, the whole of the Hudson's Bay territory was, by the treaty of Utrecht, ceded to England; and in 1763, the whole of British North America. The company has since remained in possession of the territory, but without any definite title.

**8. North-West Company of Canada.**—In 1766, various traders, competitors with the company, engaged in the fur

*Exercises.*—When and by whom was Hudson's Bay discovered? What is said of other voyages—connection with Canada—English—trade—charter to Hudson's Bay Company—conflicts—and cession?

trade. Their head-quarters were at Montreal; and they followed the old French routes into the interior. In 1784, these traders united, and formed the North-West Company of Canada. This new company directed its trade chiefly to the north-west, *via* Lake Superior, towards the Pacific Ocean and Columbia River. They even sent trading ships round Cape Horn.

**9. North-West Company's Explorations.**—In 1793, Sir Alexander Mackenzie, a partner in the North-West Company, made his famous journey from Canada, across the Rocky Mountains, to the Pacific Ocean (the first ever made north of Mexico), and discovered Frazer River. He afterwards discovered and explored the Mackenzie River. In 1811, Mr. Thompson, the astronomer, discovered the northern or main, branches of the Columbia River, and descended its stream to the Pacific Ocean.

**10. Lord Selkirk's Colony.**—In 1811, the Earl of Selkirk purchased a tract of country from the Hudson's Bay Company, lying between the United States boundary and lakes Winnipeg and Winnipegosis, since called the Red River Settlement. In 1821, he brought settlers from Scotland for his new colony. (Swiss were afterwards introduced; and in 1823, French Canadians.) In 1841, he appointed Captain Miles McDonell, (who was governor of the company's district of Assiniboine, superintendent,) who issued a proclamation forbidding the appropriation of provisions except to the use of the colonists. This assumption of exclusive jurisdiction on the part of the Hudson's Bay Company, excited the bitterest feelings on the part of the North-Western Company, and gave rise to the fierce contest of—

**11. The Rival Companies in the Indian territories;** during the progress of which the colonists were twice expelled, and many lives lost, including that of Governor Semple. In 1816, Sir Gordon Drum-

mond sent part of a regiment from Quebec to preserve order, and to restrain the violence of both companies. In 1821, the feud ceased, and the rival companies were amalgamated. When Lord Selkirk died, the company resumed the purchase, on condition of paying a certain quit-rent. Most of the original settlers left the colony. The number of residents now amounts to about 7,000. It is a mixed population.

**12. New Lease.**—In 1838, Her Majesty granted to the company a license of exclusive trade for twenty-one years. The operations of the company were gradually withdrawn to the interior. The license expires in 1859, but may be renewed.

**13. Vancouver's Island** was supposed to be part of the main land until 1789, when an American captain sailed round it. It was visited, in 1792, by Vancouver, who named it after himself and Quadra, the Spanish Commandant at Nootka Sound. In 1849, it was conditionally granted by the Queen to the Hudson's Bay Company, for the purpose of settlement, until 1859, when it will be resumed and erected into a separate colony. The Governor is now appointed by the Crown, on the nomination of the company. He is aided by a council of seven; and is authorised to divide the island into electoral districts and convene an assembly.

**24. Territorial Divisions.**—The Hudson's Bay territory is divided into several districts, which are embraced in four large departments, *viz.*: Northern, with thirty-five forts or stations, and a *dépôt* at York Fort (the capital of the territory); Southern, twenty-five stations, and *dépôt* at Moose Factory; Montreal, thirty-four stations, and *dépôt* at Lachine; and Columbia, twenty-two stations, and its *dépôt* at Fort Vancouver. Total: Four *dépôts*, and 112 forts or stations, in each of which there is a force of from four to forty men. There are also numerous smaller posts and outposts.

*Exercises.*—What is said of the North-West Company and its exploration.—Lord Selkirk's colony—the rival companies—new lease—Vancouver's Island—and territorial divisions?

**15. The Territorial Exports** are chiefly furs and skins, as follows: Beaver, otter, fisher; black, white, red, cross, and silver fox; buffalo, wolf, wolverine, martin, mink, seal, bear, and musk-rat; swan, deer, racoon, and various smaller animals. Also fish, oil, feathers, quills, and walrus ivory. The annual value is about \$2,000,000, and the net gains to the company, \$200,000. The chief portion of the furs, &c., is sent to London, to be sold at the annual trade sale; but large quantities are exported direct to the United States, Canada, &c.

**16. The Territorial Government** is administered by a chief Governor and council, residing at Montreal; and by dis-

trict superintendents and councils of chief factors and chief traders in the various districts,—at the principal of which there is also a recorder, sheriff, and coroner. Trial by jury has been established.

**15 Composition of the Company.**—The company consists of 240 proprietors, (representing a stock of \$2,000,000,) who elect a committee of seven. The affairs are managed by a governor and deputy governor, resident in England.

**18. The Population** of this vast territory is estimated at 90,000, including 63,000 aborigines belonging to the Blackfeet, Assiniboiné, Cree, Athabaskan or Chipewayan, and Slave tribes of Indians.

## XXII. THE OTHER BRITISH COLONIES IN AMERICA.

**1. General Remarks.**—The oldest and youngest British Colony is in the American group of dependencies, viz., Newfoundland, and the Bay Islands. Nearly 300 years after Sir H. Gilbert took formal possession of the Island of Newfoundland, in the name of Queen Elizabeth, a charter was granted by Queen Victoria, erecting the Bay Islands into a separate colony. During that time Britain occupied, but has been dispossessed of, the whole of the southern portion of North America; while she, in turn, has dispossessed an ancient and chivalrous rival power at the north; and with a characteristic tenacity and vigour, she has further extended her conquest over many of the islands off the American coast, as if to compensate for the irreparable loss of her thirteen noble colonies, in 1776. The insular colonies so acquired are as follows:—The Bermudas, the Bahamas, Jamaica, the eight Leeward Islands, the four Windward Islands, Trinidad, St. Lucia, British Guiana, Honduras, Bay Islands, the Falkland Islands, and Pitcairn's Islands. The whole of these colonies, including British North America, amount to twenty-nine.

### THE BERMUDA ISLANDS.

**2. Situation, &c.**—This cluster of 365 islands is situated in the North Atlantic Ocean, 580 miles from Cape Hatteras, North Carolina. The area is about 12,000 acres. They are almost surrounded by coral reefs (the only ones in the central Atlantic.)

**3. Name and History, &c.**—The islands received their name after Bermudez (Bermoothes), a Spaniard, who discovered them in 1527. They were also called Somers, after a brother of Sir George Somers, who colonized them in 1611, and

*Exercises.*—What is said of the territorial government and exports—composition of the Company—and the population? Give the general remarks in regard to the other British colonies in America.



on whose report the Virginia Company claimed them, but sold their right to 120 persons, who received a charter from James I. in 1612. In 1619, a representative government was established. In 1824 the Bermudas were made a convict station.

#### THE BAHAMA ISLANDS.

**5. The Bahamas**, a group of 500 islands north-west of Cuba and east of Florida, between which and the Bahama Islands the Gulf Stream (*see page 74*) flows into the Atlantic. Their area is 5,000 square miles. They are chiefly long and narrow, and formed of calcareous rock.

**6. History.**—San Salvador, one of the islands, is supposed to be the famous spot first reached by Columbus, on his great voyage of discovery. They were taken possession of by the Spaniards, who removed the inhabitants to Hispaniola and Cumana, to work the mines, and act as pearl divers. They were colonised by the Eng-

**4. Commerce, &c.**—The principal exports of the colony are arrow-root, potatoes, onions, and palm-leaf. The population is about 11,000. Hamilton, the capital, is situated on Bermuda, or long Island. The largest harbour is St. George's, a fine bay.

lish, in 1629; and in turn were occupied by the Spaniards, buccaniers, French, and English. By the treaty of Versailles, in 1783, they were finally ceded to England. A representative government was established in the islands an hundred years ago.

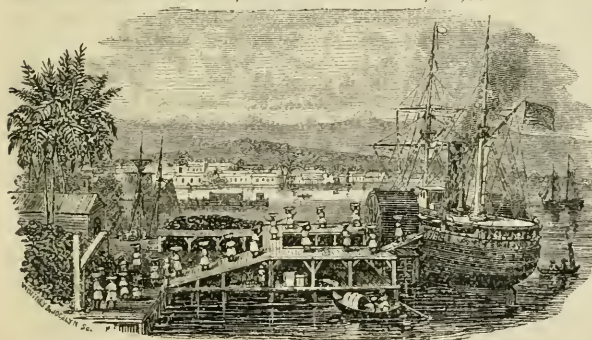
**7. Commerce, &c.**—The chief exports are salt, sponge, and fruit, which amount in value to about \$200,000. The revenue and expenditure are \$150,000. There are 50 schools, and 2,000 pupils. The population is about 30,000. Many of the settlers, in 1786, were United Empire Loyalists. The capital is Nassau, New Providence—a well-built city, defended by two forts.

#### THE ISLAND OF JAMAICA.

**8. Situation &c.**—This most important of the Great Antilles, and the largest of the British West India Islands, is 90 miles south-west of Cuba, in the Caribbean

Sea. Its general appearance is very beautiful. Its length is 150 miles, width 50 miles, and area 6,400 square miles, or 4,000,000 acres. The Blue Mountains, in many places 7,000 and 8,000 feet high, traverse its entire length. Its vegetation is exuberant and beautiful.

**9. History.**—Jamaica was discovered by Columbus, in 1494; colonised by the Spaniards in 1510; taken by the forces of the English Commonwealth, under Cromwell, in 1655. In 1661, a constitution was granted by



COALING AN OCEAN STEAMER AT KINGSTON, JAMAICA.

*Exercises.*—Describe the Bermuda and Bahama Islands, and the island of Jamaica—their position, areas, physical features, commerce, and history.



Charles II. In 1662, the island was divided into parishes, and a free tenure introduced. In 1676, representative government was suspended; but, in 1780, restored and modified. The Maroons, or runaway slaves, obtained a grant in 1738, and built two towns, on the north side of the island. In 1807, the importation of slaves was prohibited; and in 1833, slavery was abolished by the British parliament, and apprenticeship instituted. This system was abolished by the local legislature, in 1838. In 1848, Turk's Island and the Caicos were detached from the Bahamas and annexed to Jamaica. In 1852, and 1854, the present constitu-

tion was modified and adopted by the local legislature.

**10. Commerce, &c.**—Trade is extensive. The chief exports are sugar, rum, molasses, indigo, cotton, coffee, pimento, ginger, arrow-root, logwood, mahogany and other fine woods, honey, bees-wax, and cocoa-nuts. The annual value is about \$5,000,000. The revenue and expenditure are \$1,000,000. There are nearly 250 schools, attended by 14,000 pupils. The population is 400,000; 3,000 troops; and 18,000 militia. Spanish Town is the capital, but Kingston is the chief place of trade. Ocean steamers stop here to obtain a supply of coal. (*See p. 109.*)

#### THE LEEWARD ISLANDS.

**11. Position, &c.**—This group consists of several islands, as follows: Antigua, Dominica, Montserrat, Nevis, St. Christopher, Anguilla, the Virgin Islands, and Barbuda. They are south-east of Porto Rico, and the most north-easterly of the West India Isles. The capital is St. John's.

**12. Antigua**, the principal island of the group, contains 70,000 acres. It was named by Columbus, who discovered it in 1493, after a church in Seville. It was granted to the Earl of Carlisle, by Charles I. in 1625; was afterwards occupied by the French, but captured by the British, and declared a British colony, by the treaty of Breda, in 1666. The coast is indented and rugged. The interior is highly diversified and the climate dry. The population is about 40,000. The chief towns are St. John's, Falmouth, and Paxham.

**13 Dominica** is 29 miles long, by 16 wide. The area is 18,000 acres. It was discovered by Columbus, in 1498; settled by the French, about 1600; was occupied as neutral ground, in 1748; ceded by France to England, in 1763; constitution granted in 1764; seized again in 1778, but finally restored in 1783. It is of volcanic origin and the highest of the lesser Antilles.

Though mountainous and rugged, the valleys are rich and fertile. Population, 23,000. The chief towns are Roseau and St. Joseph.

**14. St. Christopher's** or St. Kitts, 20 miles long, by 5 wide. It is traversed in the centre by a mountain ridge of volcanic origin, in the middle of which rises Mount Misery, 3,711 feet high. The scenery is beautiful; the soil rich and fertile; and the climate dry and healthy. There are four rivers, and several salt ponds. Hurricanes occur occasionally: a terrible one nearly destroyed the island in 1772. Sugar and molasses are the chief exports. Columbus discovered the island in 1493; it was then inhabited by Caribs. In 1625, the English and French simultaneously colonised the upper and lower portions. Contests and strife were the consequence. In 1783, it was ceded to England. Basseterre is the capital. Its population is 7,000, and that of the island, 21,000. The island of Anguilla is a dependency.

**15. Montserrat**, an oval-shaped island, is 12 miles long by  $7\frac{1}{2}$  mile broad, with an area of 30,000 acres. It was named by Columbus after a mountain in Barcelona; colonised by Irish, from St. Christopher's, in 1632; constitution granted in 1689; in-

*Exercises.*—Describe the Leeward Islands: Antigua, Dominica, St. Christopher, and Montserrat—their situation, extent, commerce, and history.

vaded by the French in 1712, but confirmed to England in 1783. Two-thirds of the surface are mountainous and barren; the remainder is well cultivated. The population is 8,000, and is chiefly coloured. The chief town is Plymouth.

**16. Nevis** is a single mountain, two miles south of St. Christopher's, with an area of 20 miles square. It was colonized by Sir Thomas Warner, from St. Christopher's, in 1628; and a constitution granted to it in 1664. Population, 10,500.

**17. The Virgin Islands** are a group of 100 small isles, east of Porto Rico. They occupy a space of about 100 miles long, by 20 wide. Fifty of them, including an area of 50,000 acres, belong to Britain,

of which Tortola is the chief. The others belong to Denmark and Spain. The exports are: sugar, cotton, rum, indigo, and fruits, &c. The islands were discovered by Columbus, in 1494. They were visited by Dutch buccaneers in 1648; afterwards annexed to the Leeward Islands, and colonized by the English, from Anguilla. The population is about 10,000. Tortola is the capital.

**18. Barbuda** was first colonized from St. Christopher's by Sir T. Warner. Its area is 75 square miles. It was granted to the Codrington family, in 1684, and is still held by them. The island is fertile, producing corn, cotton, pepper, and tobacco. The population is 1,800.

#### THE WINDWARD ISLANDS.

**19 Extent.**—This group (also called the Caribbees) includes Barbados, St. Vincent, Grenada, the Grenadines, and Tobago. They were consolidated into one government, in 1833, under a Governor-in-Chief, resident at Barbados.

**20. Barbados**, the most easterly, and the chief of the group, is 20 miles long, by 13 wide. Area, 166 square miles. It is nearly encircled by coral reefs. The surface is diversified and picturesque. The geological features are interesting. It is rich in coal and other mineral, but has no precious metals. It is one of the healthiest islands in the West Indian Archipelago. Rain falls in November and December. Hurricanes and violent thunder storms occur in summer. Of the 106,470 acres which it contains, 100,000 are under cultivation—40,000 with sugar-cane. The exports consist of sugar, arrow-root, aloes, and cotton, and are valued at \$5,000,000. The population is 136,000. Bridgetown is its seat of government. It is a handsome and well-built city. Codrington College is situated here.

**21. History.**—Barbados was first

visited by the Portuguese; and by the English in 1605. In 1625, Sir W. Courtenay established a colony; and Jamestown was built in 1634, in honour of King James I. In 1635, Charles I. authorised the Earl of Carlisle to make laws for the Island, with the consent of the free inhabitants. The first act of the Assembly was recorded in 1646. Subsequently disputes took place between Lords Pembroke, Carlisle, Wilmoughby, Marlborough, and Kinnoul, as to alleged claims, in respect to the island, which had been extensively colonised during the civil war of the Commonwealth.

**22. The Government** consists of a Governor-in-Chief over the entire group (at present the Hon. Francis Hincks, of Canada, *see page 71*), an Executive Legislative Council of 10, and an Assembly of 24 members, elected annually.

**23. St. Vincent Island**, discovered by Columbus, on the festival of that saint, is 100 miles west of Barbados. It is 17 miles long, by 10 wide. The area is 132 square miles, or 84,000 acres. A ridge of high volcanic hills, well wooded, runs north and south. Souffriere, a volcanic mountain, is

*Exercises.*—Describe Nevis, the Virgin Islands, and the Windward Islands; Barbados and St. Vincent—their situation, extent, commerce and history.

3,000 feet high, with a crater, three miles in circuit, and 500 feet deep. A great eruption occurred in 1812. The valleys are fertile and beautiful. The climate is humid. Exports: Sugar, rum, molasses, arrow-root, and cotton. Value, \$1,500,000. Population, 32,000. Capital, Kingstown. After many local contests, the island was ceded to England, in 1763, and received a constitution. Its first legislature met in 1767. It was occupied by the French from 1779 to 1783, when it was restored to England. 120 islets, called the Grenadines, are annexed to this government.

**24. Tobago**, twenty four miles north-east of Trinidad, is 32 miles long, by 12 wide, with an area of 97 square miles, or 92,084 acres. It is a mass of rocks, with small picturesque valleys between; well watered, and free from hurricanes, though unhealthy. The exports are sugar, molasses, and rum. Value, \$300,000. Population, 16,000. Scarborough is the capital. The island was discovered by Columbus, in 1498; colonised by the Dutch, in 1677, who were expelled by the French; ceded by France to

England, in 1763; and by England to France, in 1783; retaken in 1794; again ceded to France by the Treaty of Amiens, in 1803; again retaken in 1804, and finally ceded to England in 1814. The first legislature was convened in 1768, and the constitution confirmed in 1794.

**25. Grenada**, north-west of Tobago, is a very beautiful oblong island,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles long by 10 wide. Its area is 76 square miles, or 80,000 acres. The interior, traversed by irregular volcanic mountains (some of them 3,000 feet high), is rugged and picturesque. In the centre is a circular lake, 1,700 ft. above the level,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles circuit, and enclosed by high mountains. Streams are numerous. Chief exports: Sugar, rum, molasses, and cotton. Value, \$600,000. Population, 32,000. Capital, St. George. Discovered by Columbus, in 1498; inhabited by Caribs, who were exterminated by the French. Colonised by France in 1760; taken by England in 1762, and ceded to her in 1763; received a constitution in 1765; retaken by France in 1779, but restored in 1783.

#### THE ISLAND OF TRINIDAD.

**26. Physical Features.**—This, next to Jamaica, is the most important West Indian Island. It lies immediately off the north-east coast of Venezuela, south of Tobago, at the mouth of the Gulf of Paria, and opposite the northern debouches of the Orinoco river. It is oblong, with three long angular projections. Length, 50 miles; breadth, 30; area, 1,703 square miles, or 1,536,000 acres. From the north it appears like an immense ridge of rocks; from the south, the panorama of hill, valley, and plain, covered with unfading verdure, is magnificent. The mountains, some 3,000 feet high, run east and west. The rivers are large. In the south-west of the island there are mud volcanoes, constantly bubbling but never overflowing. Some throw out

salt water. Submarine volcanoes occur on both sides of the island. One discharges petroleum; the other bitumen, black as jet, accompanied by loud detonations. On the leeward side there is an asphaltum, or pitch lake,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  mile in circuit, and 80 feet above the sea. It is hard at the edge, but soft and bubbling in the centre. The climate is not unhealthy; dew is copious. The soil is generally fertile, and timber abundant. Exports: Sugar, cocoa, coffee, cotton, molasses, rum, &c. Value, \$2,500,000. Population, 80,000.

**27. History.**—Trinidad was discovered and named by Columbus, in 1498, and was visited by Sir Walter Raleigh, in 1595. It belonged alternately to Spain and France; but, in 1797, it was taken by Sir Ralph

*Exercises.*—Describe Tobago and Grenada. What is said of the Island of Trinidad. What of its situation, physical features, commerce, and history.

Abercrombie, and confirmed to England by the peace of Amiens, in 1802. By Royal proclamation, in 1813, the ancient Spanish laws in force in 1797 were confirmed, sub-

ject to subsequent modification. Trinidad is a Crown colony, and has no legislative assembly. Port-of-Spain, the capital, is one of the finest towns in the West Indies.

#### THE ISLAND OF SAINT LUCIA.

**28. Extent, &c.**—This island, 21 miles north by east of St. Vincent, and 20 miles south of the French island of Martinique, is 27 miles long, by 14 wide, with an area of 270 square miles, or 150,000 acres. It has a rugged and mountainous surface: many of the heights are fantastic in appearance. Evidence of former volcanic action is abundant. The climate is insalubrious; and the existence of the “rat-tail,” a venomous serpent, endangers life still more. The forests are dense; but the valleys are fertile and well cultivated. Chief products are sugar and cocoa. Population, 26,000.

**29. History.**—The English colonised the island in 1637; but were expelled the next year. It was held alternately by the

French and English. By the treaties of Utrecht, in 1713, and of Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748, it was declared a neutral territory. By the treaty of Paris, in 1763, and the peace of Amiens, in 1802, it was ceded to France; but was finally confirmed to England, by the treaty of Paris, in 1815. The laws, except where subsequently modified, are the ancient laws of France (antecedent to the code of Napoleon); the customs of Paris; the ordinances of French kings; the code Noire, of 1685, approved and signed by Colbert; and the edict of 1785. The laws are called the “Code de Martinique.” A Supreme Council was established in 1831; but, as St. Lucia is a Crown colony, there is no representative assembly.

#### THE SOUTH AMERICAN COLONIES; I. BRITISH GUIANA.

**30. Extent, &c.**—Gui-a-na, situated on the north east coast of South America, is divided into three parts; French, Dutch and British. The last is the westerly portion, and is 560 miles long and 200 broad, with a coast line of 280 miles. The area is 100,000 square miles, and includes the districts of Demerara, Essequibo, and Berbice.

**31. Physical Features.**—The Demerara coast, for ten miles inland, is low and sandy. Like Holland, it is banked to keep out the sea. The first elevations are sand hills; behind them the land is undulating, with some striking eminences. The interior is traversed by chains of mountains. In the Pacaraima, the loftiest range, an elevation of 7,500 feet is attained. The Sierra Acarai chain is densely wooded.

**32. Geology.**—Granite is the prevailing geological formation. Some of the detached masses of granite are of singular

shape, chiefly conical, and of great height, Ataraipu, an isolated granite rock, rises 1,300 feet above the sea. A column of granite, 50 ft. high, in the Pacaraima range, resembles the decayed trunk of a tree. A pure white clay is found in Essequibo.

**33. Rivers, &c.**—The Essequibo is 400 miles long, and 15 or 20 miles wide at its mouth; the Demerara, 200 miles long and navigable for 100; the Berbice, 250 miles long, is navigable for 50 miles, and for small craft, 165 miles. Up this river was discovered the splendid water-lily, the *Victoria Regia*. The cascades in several of the rivers are grand and picturesque: some of them from 300 to 1,500 feet high.

**34. Climate and Products.**—There are two wet and two dry seasons—spring, and fall, winter and summer. During the dry season the climate is agreeable. There are violent thunder storms, but no hurri-

*Exercises.*—Describe the Island of St. Louis; also the South American Colonies: I. British Guiana—extent, physical features, geology, rivers, climate, and products.



canes. Vegetation is luxuriant. Of the forest trees, the mira is the finest. The pineapple, marmalade, and other tropical fruits abound. The chief exports are sugar, rum, coffee, and hardwood, valued at \$5,000,000.

**35. History.**—It is not settled whether Columbus, in 1498, or Vasco Nunez, in 1504, discovered Guiana. It was colonised by the Dutch, in 1580; who, in 1621, advanced their settlements to what is now British Guiana. It was held alternately by Holland, France, and England. In 1781, it was taken by Sir George Rodney, but restored to the Dutch in 1801. It was again taken in 1803; and in 1814, confirmed to Great Britain. In 1831, the districts of Demerara, Essequibo, and Berbice, were united into one colony. In August, 1834,

slavery was abolished, and the apprenticeship system in 1838. The colony is governed by the Roman-Dutch law of the United Provinces, as promulgated by the States General, in 1774. The government now consists of a Governor and a "Court of Policy" of ten members—five official persons and five non-official; the latter chosen by an electoral "College of Kiezers," who are chosen for life by the ratepayers. There is also a College of six Financial Representatives, elected for two years. This college and the Court of Policy form the combined court, or General Assembly of the colony. The population is 150,000, including 8,000 aborigines. The chief towns are George Town (the capital), Amsterdam, Berbice, and Demerara.

## II. HONDURAS AND THE BAY ISLANDS.

**36. Honduras** is east of Yucatan, in Central America. Its length is 170, and its breadth 100 miles. Numerous islands lie along the coast, which is swampy. The interior is wooded, and the soil in the valleys fertile. Climate moist, but not unfavorable to vegetation, and not unhealthy. The principal rivers are Belize, Rio Hondo, and Siboon. Sugar, cotton, coffee, indigo, mahogany, cedar, dye-woods, and turtle, are the chief exports. Value, \$2,500,000. Capital, Balize, Belize, or Waliz, a Spanish corruption for Wallace,—the name of a noted English pirate, who frequented the principal river. The coasts were explored by the Spaniards, in 1498. In 1670, British occu-

pation was recognised; and also by the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713. Sir W. Burnaby introduced representative government, and other English forms, in 1765. A code of laws was drawn up in 1809. The civil government now consists of a Superintendent, an Executive Council of nine members, and the "Public Meeting," or Legislative Assembly, of 21 members,—17 elected, and four nominated by the Superintendent.

**37. The Bay Islands** (in Honduras Bay) are dependencies of Honduras, under a chief magistrate, appointed by the Superintendent. In 1852, they were, by letters patent, erected into a colony, under the name of the "Ruatan Bay Islands."

## III. THE FALKLAND ISLANDS AND PITCAIRN'S ISLAND.

**38. The Falkland Islands** are situated to the east of Patagonia. They consist of two large and about 150 smaller islands, comprising an aggregate area of 3,500,000 acres. East Falkland is 85 miles long, by 53 wide; and West Falkland, 80 miles long, by 40 broad. They are separated by a narrow sound. The whole

group of islands is very much indented with bays, sounds, and Harbours. One divides East Falkland nearly in two. Ridges of rocky hills prevail, between which, in many places, are found streams of stones. The climate is equable and salubrious. There are no trees; but sweet-scented flowers abound. Cattle, horses,

*Exercises.*—Give the history of British Guiana. Describe, II. Honduras and the Bay Islands; III. The Falkland Islands and Pitcairn's Island.

and vegetables are the chief products. The islands were discovered by Davis or Hawkins, in 1592-4. In 1690, they were visited and named by Strong. In 1710, a French vessel touched at them, and named them Isles Malouines. They were alternately held by France, Spain, England, and the Argentine Republic. In 1833, they were taken possession of by England, for the protection of the southern whale fishery. Stanley is the capital.

**39. Pitcairn's Island**, in the Pacific Ocean ( $24^{\circ}$  south latitude,  $130^{\circ}$  west longitude), was discovered in 1757, by a son of

Major Pitcairn, on board of H.M. sloop "Swallow." It contains 2,009 acres. Its chief interest is derived from the history of the remarkable colony founded here by John Adams, one of the mutineers of the English ship "Bounty," and twenty-six other persons, in 1790. The colony was first visited in 1814. In 1825, it had increased to 66 persons. In 1838, Commander Elliott took possession in the name of Her Majesty, and drew up laws for the government of the islanders. In 1851, the population was 160. Whalers visit it for provisions. The colony has been removed.

### XXIII. BRITISH COLONIES IN ASIA.

**1. This Group** includes British India, and the islands of Ceylon, Hong Kong, and Labuan, and the Stations at Aden and Isle of Perim.

#### BRITISH INDIA.

**2. Area.**—British India, continental and insular, comprises an area of nearly 1,000,000 square miles. It is divided into four—

**3. Classes of Territories**, viz.: I. Those governed directly through the East India Company; II. Dependent Native States; III. Independent Native States under British protection; and IV. Stations.

**4. Hindostan** belongs to the first class. It is triangular in shape, and is bounded on the north by the Himalayan Mountains; on the east by Burmah and the Bay of Bengal; on the south by the Indian Ocean; and on the west by the Arabian Sea, Beloochistan, and Afghanistan. Its area is nearly 1,500,000 square miles: the British, 837,412; Native, 627,910; French, 188; and the Portuguese, 1,066. Its great rivers are the Indus and the Ganges. The Himalayan Mountains, at the north, are the largest in the world—some of the peaks being 28,000 feet above the level of the sea.

**5. The Political Divisions** include the three Presidencies, viz. Bengal to the

east, Madras to the south, Bombay to the west; the north west Provinces, and the Malacca Straits settlements south of the Malay peninsula.

**6. The Supreme Government** is vested in the East India Government, represented by a Court of 18 Directors, and under the supervision of a Board of Control, appointed by the Crown, and consisting of certain Cabinet Ministers. The Governor General is appointed by the Company, subject to the approval of the Crown.

**7. The Local Government** consists of a Governor General and Council of 11 members, with the Lieut. Governors of the other four subordinate divisions. The seat of government is at Calcutta, in the Presidency of Bengal, and on the Hoogly. It is 5,000 miles from London.

**8. History.**—Hindostan was, for 1,800 years, alternately the Seat of Greek, Tartar, Mohammedan, and Mogul rule. At the latter end of the fifteenth century, it was colonised by the Portuguese; and in the 17th, by the Dutch, French, and English.

*Exercises.*—For what is Pitcairn's Island noted? Which are the various British colonies in Asia? Describe India, or Hindostan. Give its political divisions, government, and history.

In 1699, the British East India, or London, Company, was formed: received its charter in 1600; and established its first factory at Bantam, in 1602. Its charter was frequently renewed, and additional factories established. In 1662, the island of Bombay was ceded as dower, on his marriage, to Charles II. In 1698, Fort William was erected, and the district around Calcutta purchased. Victorious wars have since added to these possessions, until British India has now become a mighty empire. In 1857, an extensive mutiny broke out among the Sepoys, or native soldiers. It has since been subdued. The government of India has been transferred to the Crown.

**9. The Chief Exports** are: indigo, linseed, opium, cotton, sugar, silk, wool, salt, coffee, pepper, saltpetre, and rice. The annual value is about \$127,500,000.

#### THE ISLAND OF CEYLON.

**12. Physical Features, &c.**—The island is pear-shaped, and is 50 miles south-east of Hindostan, with which it is almost connected by two islands, and a shoal called "Adam's Bridge." It is 270 miles long, by 100 broad. Area, 24,664 square miles. The north coast is flat, but picturesque at the south and east, where the interior is mountainous.

**13. Products, &c.**—The island is highly fertile, and produces coffee, cinnamon, and cocoa-nuts. The talipot, tamarind, bread-fruit, palm-trees, and Chinese pitcher plant also flourish. The exports amount to \$7,500,000.

**14. History and Government.**—Ceylon, anciently Taprobane, is called by the natives Singhal. It was known to the Greeks; visited by traders in the 6th, by Marco Polo in the 13th, and by Sir J. Man-deville in the 14th centuries. Originally



CHINESE  
PITCHER PLANT.

**10. Population, &c.**—The population of the East Indies is estimated at nearly 200,000,000 (viz., British States, 132,000,000; Native, 50,000,000; French, 204,000; Portuguese, 314,000), and chiefly consists of Hindoos, Mohammedans, and about 100,000 Europeans. The army numbers 200,000 men; and the navy, 60 vessels, 25,000 tons. Brahmanism is the prevailing religion of the Hindoos; but Christianity has been extensively introduced by various missionaries.

**11. Cities.**—Calcutta, in the Presidency of Bengal, is the capital of British India. The other chief cities are; Serampore and Patna (Bengal), Benares, Delhi, and Agra, in the north-west Provinces; Lucknow, in Oude; Lahore, in the Punjaub; Bombay; Hyderabad, in Scinde; Madras; and Singapore, in the Malacca Straits settlement.

divided into a number of petty kingdoms, it was finally reduced to one under the King of Kandy. In 1505, the Portuguese established trade, and became its protectors against the Arabian pirates. The Portuguese were expelled by the Dutch, who were in turn expelled by the British. In 1815, the Kandians sought the intervention of the British to depose their tyrannical king. This was done; and Ceylon has since become a British colony. In 1818 and 1849, disaffection showed itself, but was suppressed. Trial by jury was introduced in 1811. The Cingalese and Roman-Dutch laws, unless when repugnant to British law, are still administered. The government consists of a Governor, an Executive Council of five, and a Legislative Council of fourteen members.

**15. The Chief Towns** are Colomba, the Capital; Trincomalee, Kandy, Jaffna, and Point de Galle. There are six districts. The Population of 1,500,000, is chiefly Hindoos.

*Exercises.*—What are the exports and population of India? Name the chief cities. Describe the Island of Ceylon—its physical features, products, and history. Which are the chief towns?

## THE ISLAND OF LABUAN.

**16. This Island** is 30 miles north-west of Borneo, in the Malay Archipelago. Its length is 10 and its breadth 5 miles. It was colonised by Sir James, or Rajah, Brooke;

and, by treaty with the Sultan of Borneo, was made a British colony in 1846. Sir James was appointed governor. Coal is found in the island.

## THE ISLAND OF HONG KONG, OR "RED HARBOUR."

**17. This Island** lies a quarter of a mile off the Chinese coast, and 75 miles from Canton. Its length is 10 miles; breadth,  $7\frac{1}{2}$ ; area, 27 square miles. It was ceded, as part indemnity, to Great Britain, in 1841-2. It is chiefly composed of lofty, barren rocks; but since it became a British colony its

commercial value is very great. Victoria, the capital, situated on a splendid bay and harbour of the same name. The population, chiefly Chinese, increased from 5,000, in 1842, to 37,000, in 1852. By the Chinese it is called *Hiang Kiang*, "the fragrant flowing streams."

## XXIV. THE BRITISH COLONIES IN AUSTRAL, OR SOUTHERN, ASIA.

**1. This Group** includes the Provinces in the great island or continent of Australia (or New Holland), Tasmania (or Van Dieman's Land), and New Zealand.

## THE ISLAND OR CONTINENT OF AUSTRALIA.

**2. Size and Physical Features.**—Australia is 2,500 miles long, by 1,900 broad. Its area of 3,000,000 square miles is compact, the coast having few large indentations. The gulfs are; Carpentaria and Cambridge to the north; and Spencer and St. Vincent to the south. The bays are; Moreton and Botany Bays, to the east; Port Philip to the south; and Shark Bay to the west. The south and east coasts are mountainous. The ranges are called the Warragongs, or Australian Alps, and are divided into the Liverpool and Blue Mountains, &c. Torrens, a Salt Water Lake, shaped like a horse-shoe, extends northwards from Spencer Gulf. The Murray, at the south east, with its tributaries (the Darling, &c.), 1,500 miles long, is the only large river. The interior is supposed to be an immense plain, destitute of vegetation, with island hills here and there.

**3. Climate and Products.**—The climate, although anomalous and variable,

is salubrious. From the interior come hot winds and a fine dust, which insinuates itself everywhere. Long droughts, and as long rains, prevail. Most of the water is absorbed in salt marshes and swamps. When the rain falls, vegetation is rapid, and pasture abundant. In addition to the gold-fields, Australia is rich in iron, copper, tin, coal, and other minerals. Next to gold, wool and tallow are the chief exports, as Australia is a vast grazing country, and abounds in flocks and herds. The annual value of the exports, \$70,000,000. The animals are of the marsupial (or opossum) tribe, of which there are forty kinds, from the great kangaroo to the kangaroo-rat. There are no ruminating animals; and the only carnivorous land animal is the dingoe, or wild dog. The platypus, or duck-billed otter; flying fox and the lyre bird, are the most singular of the animal tribe. Reptiles are abundant. The trees are also peculiar; the principal are the leafless beef-

*Exercises.*—Describe the islands of Labuan and Hong-Kong. Which are the British Colonies in Australasia? Describe Australia—its physical features, climate, products.



wood, the gum-tree, the grass-tree, myrtle, or tea tree, and the yellow wood.

**3. The Political Divisions** are New South Wales, Victoria (gold colonies) Queensland, South Australia, and Western Australia. In New South Wales, South Australia, and Victoria, constitutions similar to that of

Canada have been established; and Western Australia has a single nominated Council. The population of the various Provinces is about 735,000.

**5. The Chief Towns** are Sydney, the capital of New South Wales. It contains many fine public buildings and a population



SYDNEY, THE CAPITAL OF NEW SOUTH WALES.

of 70,000. Melbourne, the capital of Victoria, laid out in 1837, has a population of 100,000; Geelong, 25,000; Ballarat, 80,000; Adelaide, the capital of South Australia, 10,000. Perth is the capital of West Australia. A railroad connects Melbourne with Mount Alexander gold-fields.

**6. History.**—Torres, a Spaniard, visited the northern coast in 1605; the Dutch did so about the same period; and Dampier about 1770. In 1770, Capt. Cook visited and named Botany Bay. He took possession of the coast in the name of George III. In 1788, Capt. Phillips landed at Port Jack-

son, with 180 convicts. New South Wales remained a convict station until 1840. In 1808, an insurrection of the colonists deposed Governor Bligh. A Legislative Council and trial by jury were established in 1829. This council was made elective in 1843. The first steamboat was launched, and a college established in 1831. Constitutions were granted in 1850. In 1851, gold was discovered by Edward Hargreaves; since which time emigration has poured in, and now the colonies gained by George III. in 1770, bid fair to rival, in wealth and prosperity, the American, lost in 1776.

*Exercises.*—What are the political divisions of Australia? Name the chief towns. Give a synopsis of the history of Australia.

## TASMANIA, OR VAN DIEMAN'S LAND.

**7. Size, &c.**—This island, 100 miles south of Victoria, is heart-shaped. Its length is 186, and its breadth 165 miles. It has an area of 24,000 square miles. The north-east and west shores are bold and rocky. At the north and south there are good harbours. The interior is mountainous and rugged, and the peaks numerous. The scenery along the coast opposite Bruny Island is very fine. The principal rivers are the Tamar and the Derwent. Several beautiful lakes are in the interior.

**8. The Climate and Products.**—The climate is colder and more humid than that of Australia; but the natural products and animals are nearly the same. The chief exports are wool, wheat, flour, gold-ore, and timber; annual value about \$7,500,000.

**9. The Government, &c.,** are similar to those of Canada. The population is about 71,000. Hobart Town is the capital.

**10. History.**—Tasman, a Dutch navi-

## THE ISLANDS OF NEW ZEALAND.

**13. This Group** is directly east of Tasmania, and consists of three principal and a number of smaller islands: New Ulster, Munster and Leinster, &c. The length through their centres is 1,200 miles; area, 105,115 square miles. They are mountainous and volcanic. The climate is humid and beautiful, and the soil fertile. Owing to their geographical position, June is mid-winter and January midsummer—the compass also points to the south. The rivers are numerous, but none of them are large. Ferns of almost every variety and size, and flax, grow luxuriantly. The wingless bird is the only remarkable specimen of the animal kingdom; fish are abundant. Copper, sulphur, iron, gold, &c., are also found. The islands were first discovered by Tasman in 1642. They were first settled in 1815, and erected into an independent colony in 1840. Auckland, the capital, Wellington, Nelson, and Canterbury are the chief towns. The population is about 150,000, of which 30,000 are whites. The Maories, or natives, belong to the Malay family.

gator, discovered the island in 1642, and called it Van Dieman, after the Dutch East Indian Governor. Capt. Cook visited it in 1769. Dr. Bass circumnavigated it in 1797. The first convict settlement from New South Wales, was made in 1803. These stations were, in 1853, confined to Tasman Peninsula and Maria Island. In 1854, the present constitution was granted; and in 1855, the name of Tasmania formally given to the colony by the Queen.

**11. Norfolk Island** is 900 miles east of Australia, and was until lately attached to the government of Tasmania. Its area is 9,000 acres. It is a beautiful island; and until 1853, a penal colony for desperate offenders. It was discovered by Capt. Cook, in 1774. Her Majesty has been authorised to declare it a separate colony, and the inhabitants of Pitcairn's Island are being removed hither. (*See page 115.*)



WINGLESS BIRD OF NEW ZEALAND (*Apteryx Australis*.)

*Exercises.*—Describe Tasmania—its size, physical features, climate, products, and government. Describe the islands of New Zealand. What is said of the wingless bird?

## XXV. THE COLONIES IN OR NEAR AFRICA.

**1. These Colonies** include the Cape, Kaffraria, Natal, Sierra Leone, Gambia, Gold Coast, Mauritius, Seychelles, St. Helena, and Ascension.

### THE CAPE COLONIES.

**2. The South African colonies** include the Cape of Good Hope, British Kaffraria, and Natal. The most important is—

**3. The Cape Colony**, which is bounded on the S.E. and W. by the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, and on the N. by the Orange River and tributaries. The length is 520 miles, and its breadth 430; area, 150,000 square miles. It is divided into provinces and districts. The coast is not bold, but consists of a series of headlands, the principal of which is the celebrated Cape itself. The interior consists of a series of plains and mountain ranges, rising one above the other, until the continuous line of the Roggeveld, Nieuwveld and Winter Mountains is gained. On the other side of this range the country again recedes towards the Orange River. Olifant is the only other river of importance; both fall into the Atlantic. The climate is variable; hot S.E. winds sometimes prevail. There is little rain.

**4. Natural Products.**—Wheat is extensively cultivated. Of the native plants the heaths and silver tree are the most celebrated. A thorny vegetation, (aloes, &c.,) called the bush, prevails in the eastern part. The pork tree, yellow tree, Hottentot's bread, and many rare botanical plants also abound. The most important animals are the giraffe, elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, lion, panther, hyena, buffalo, antelope, springbok, &c. Snakes and other reptiles are abundant. The chief exports are wool, skins, wine, iron, ostrich feathers, &c.; value \$2,000,000.

**5. Inhabitants.**—The mild Hottentots and intelligent Kaffirs are the two great native races of negroes. These are divided into

ten or twelve different tribes. The population is 200,000, of which 75,000 are coloured; the remainder are chiefly Dutch and British. Cape Town (25,000), the capital, and Graham's Town, are the principal places.

**6. History.**—The Cape was discovered by Diaz, a Portuguese, in 1486; not being able to double it, he called it Cape Torment, or Tempest Cape. The Portuguese king knowing that it was an important step gained towards India, called it the Cape of Good Hope. Vasco de Gama at length doubled it in 1497. In 1620 the English took possession of, but did not settle it. The Dutch colonised it in 1650, and retained the colony for 156 years. In 1795 the English took it, but restored it in 1802. In 1806 it was again taken, and confirmed to the British in 1814. Wars with the native races have since followed; but peace now prevails.

**7. Kaf-fra-ri-a** is situated on the coast to the N.E. of the Cape Colony. Though now a separate colony, it was colonised from the Cape, and formed part of that government until 1854. Kaffraria is 250 miles long and 80 wide; area, 20,000 square miles. Rain prevails in the winter months, as we proceed north from the cape. The rivers run in deep beds owing to the torrents; of these the Kei is the largest. Maize, millet, and water-melons are the chief products.

**8. Na-tal** lies to the N. of Kaffraria. It is 200 miles long; area, 28,000 square miles. The surface is undulating and well watered. The climate is healthy and soil fertile. It was colonised from the Cape. The chief products are cotton, indigo, sugar, coffee, wheat, tobacco, &c.

*Exercises.*—Which are the African colonies? Describe the Cape colony. What are its natural products? Who are its inhabitants? Give its history? Describe Kaffraria and Natal.



## THE MAURITIUS AND SEYCHELLES ISLANDS.

**9. The Mauritius** lies 500 miles east of Madagascar. It is 40 miles long and 25 wide; area, 700 square miles. Surrounded by coral reefs, the interior is rugged and mountainous. The chief peaks are the Brabant and Peter Botte. The plains are fertile and well watered, and the climate salubrious: but hurricanes prevail. The mango, mimosa, and other tropical plants are found in abundance. Chief exports: sugar, rice, maize, mandioc, &c. The island was discovered by the Portuguese in 1505; taken possession of by the Dutch in 1598, and called after Prince Maurice of Nassau. It

was captured by the French in 1721, and by the British in 1810. The well known French tale of "Paul and Virginia" is laid in this island. Port Louis is the capital, and French the principal language. Its population is about 170,000.

**10. The Seychelles** (Sa'shel) are 30 islands which lie 850 miles directly north of Mauritius. They are divided into four groups; area, 50,000 acres. They were colonized by the French in 1743; taken by the British in 1794, and annexed to Mauritius in 1814. The population is 7,000. Mahé, the largest island, is 16 miles long by 4 broad.

## SIERRA LEONE, GAMBIA, AND THE GOLD COAST SETTLEMENTS.

**11. Si-er-ra Le-one**, a peninsula near Liberia on the west coast of Africa, is 18 miles long by 12 wide. Including the adjacent islands, the area is 25,000 square miles. The interior is rocky; soil fertile. Chief products: rice, maize, yams, plantains, cocoa, banana, pine apple, orange, &c. The guinea-fowl and guinea-pig are natives. The colony was discovered by the Portuguese in 1482. It was made a free colony for liberated slaves in 1787, by Clarkson, Wilberforce, and Sharp. Several slaves were sent here from Nova Scotia, in 1792. The climate is unhealthy for Europeans. The population is about 50,000. Free Town is the capital.

**12. The Gambia River** settlements N.W. from Sierra Leone, include the island of St. Mary and several forts on the river.

## ST. HELENA AND ASCENSION ISLANDS.

**14. The Island of St. Helena** is 1,400 miles west from Africa, and is 10½ miles long by 7 wide. Area, 30,000 acres. It is an important stopping-place for vessels from Europe to the East. It is of volcanic origin, and is pyramidal in shape. Its coasts are precipitous. Diana's Peak, and Lot and Lot's Wife, are the chief mountain tops. The island has acquired its chief celebrity from being the place of the first Napoleon's exile, from 1816 till his death, in 1821. His remains were removed to Paris, with great pomp, in 1840. James

The climate is healthy. The chief exports are wax, hides, ivory, rice, &c.; value, \$1,000,000. The population is 6,000, chiefly free negroes. The first settlements were formed for trade and traffic in slaves; but in 1749 the British government indemnified the owners and established a free colony.

**13. The Gold Coast** settlements in Upper Guinea lie east of Sierra Leone, and are chiefly trading forts and stations. They have an area of 8,000 square miles. The soil is fertile. The colony was first settled by the Portuguese, in 1610, who were dispossessed by the Dutch, but confirmed to England in 1672. The Danish settlements were purchased by England in 1850, for \$50,000. The chief stations are Cape Coast Castle (the capital), where Miss Landon, the poetess, died; Axim, and Accra.

Town is the capital. The island was discovered by the Portuguese, in 1502; held by the Dutch till 1651; and by the English East India Company from that time until 1833, when it was surrendered. The population is about 5,000.

**15. Ascension Island**, 280 miles north-west of St. Helena, is 8 miles long, by 6 wide. Area, 35 square miles. It was discovered on Ascension-day, 1501, and taken possession of by Great Britain, in 1815. It is of volcanic origin; and is famous for its turtles.

*Exercises.*—Describe the Mauritius and Seychelles Islands. What is said of Sierra Leone, the Gambia River and Gold Coast settlements; St. Helena and the Ascension Islands?



## XXVI. BRITISH DEPENDENCIES IN EUROPE.

1. These Dependencies are the Ionian Islands, Malta, Gibraltar, Heligoland, Isle of Man, and the Channel Islands. They are not colonies, in the ordinary sense of the term.

### THE IONIAN ISLANDS.

2. This Group lies off the west coast of Greece, opposite the Gulf of Lepanto, and includes Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, Santa Maura, Theaki (or Ithaca), Paxo, Cerigo, and several other smaller islets. United area, 1,092 square miles. Their surface is mountainous, with some fertile plains. Products: wheat and other grains, wine, olives, currants, &c. Ship-building is a branch of industry. Value of exports, \$2,000,000. The population is 230,000. The chief towns are, Corfu, Zante, &c.

3. History.—Corfu, the ancient Corcyra, was originally a Corinthian colony; afterwards it be-

came part of the Roman empire; it was under Venice, from 1336 to the dissolution of that republic, in 1796, when it became a French colony. In 1799, it was taken by the Russian and Turkish fleets, and placed under the protection of Turkey; again restored to France in 1806-9; taken by England in 1810; and by the treaty of Paris, in 1814, declared a free state, under the protection of Great Britain, that power occupying all the fortified places. The government of the republic is in the hands of the islanders, subject to the approval of the British Lord High Commissioner.

### THE ISLANDS OF MALTA, GOZO, AND CUMINO.

4. This Group lies in the Mediterranean Sea, between the island of Sicily and Africa. Malta is the chief. It is 17 miles long, by 9 wide, and has an area of 988 square miles. Except at the south side, the coast is deeply indented. The surface is rocky, with very little soil. Cotton is the staple. The vine, figs, oranges, and olives are abundant. The Maltese cats abound here. Being central in the Mediterranean, it is a great commercial depot. It has fine docks, and is well fortified. Its population is 141,000. Valetta is the capital. Gozo, 9 miles long, by  $\frac{1}{2}$  wide, is more fertile. The Giant's Tower is its chief object of

interest. Cumino is only one mile and a half long, by three-quarters wide.

5. History.—Malta is said to be the Melita on which St. Paul was shipwrecked. Peopled by the Phœnicians, and held by them, it passed successively under the dominion of the Carthaginians, Romans, Saracens, and Sicilians; and in 1530, was granted by the Emperor Charles V. to the Jerusalem Knights of St. John; held by them until 1798, when it was taken by Napoleon I.; by England in 1800, and ceded to her in 1814. Representative government was established in 1890. The Governor, as President, has two votes.

### GIBRALTAR, HELIGOLAND, ISLE OF MAN, AND CHANNEL ISLANDS.

6. Gibraltar, called one of the Pillars of Hercules, is a perpendicular rock, at the extreme south of Andalusia, in Spain, forming the key to the Mediterranean. Its fortress of 1,000 guns, is the most celebrated in the world. Caverns and galleries have been cut in the solid rock, for communication and defence. The town, on the western declivity, is a single, spacious street, paved and lighted. It is the chief entrepôt for British commerce with adjoining States, and is famous for its cigar manufactories and smuggling. It was founded by a Moorish chief, in 711; ceded to Spain in the 15th century; and captured by the English in 1704.

7. Heligoland, or Holy Land, an island in the North Sea, 46 miles north-west from the mouths of the Elbe and Weser, is a rock, 200 feet high, with a village and light-house. It was taken from Denmark in 1807, and is now a watering-

place. It was held in high veneration in the middle ages.

8. The Isle of Man is practically part of Great Britain itself. It is 35 miles from England, between it and Ireland. Its area is 220 square miles. From the 10th and 13th century it was under the dominion of Norway. In 1266, it was ceded to Alexander, King of Scotland. It descended to the Duke of Athol, who, in 1765, ceded it to the Crown, for £72,000.

9. The Channel Islands lie chiefly off the French coast. They are Jersey, Guernsey, Alderney, and Sark (or Sark). Having formed part of the Dukedom of Normandy, they were retained by England when the Duchy was relinquished, and were, in 1103, formally annexed by Henry I. to the British Crown, under the dominion of which they have since remained.

*Exercises.*—Which are the British Dependencies in Europe? Describe the Ionian Islands; the Islands of Malta, Gozo, and Cumino; Gibraltar, Heligoland, Isle of Man, and the Channel Islands.

## CONCLUSION.

---

We have now finished our survey of the great colonial empire of Britain, extending, as it does, from the mouth of the Mackenzie River, away in the far north, down through the British North American Provinces, the West Indies, Honduras and British Guiana, to the Falkland Islands; thence, stretching from the rocky station at Aden, in Arabia, and Perim, in the Red Sea, to the mighty territories of India and the Chinese island of Hong-Kong, in the far east. Again, skirting Africa, from the Seychelles and Mauritius, to Natal and Cape Colony, Ascension Island, St. Helena and the Gold Coast, Gambia and Sierra Leone, it plants its flag on Gibraltar, Malta, and the Ionian Islands, and passes on to the Channel Islands, near Britain, and Heligoland, in Northern Europe.

To the statesman, the contemplation of so vast an empire acknowledging the sovereignty of the little islands of Britain, enjoying the political privileges conferred by their free institutions, the prestige of their traditional greatness, and the protection of their national flag, might well call forth utterance of those beautiful and impressive words of the Honorable Daniel Webster, to which he gave expression some years ago. Standing once on the summit of the famous citadel of Quebec, while the drums of the soldiers beat the morning *réveille*, he referred to the territorial greatness and conquests of Great Britain as worthy of "a power which had dotted the surface of the whole globe with her possessions and military posts; whose morning drum-beat, following the sun, and keeping company with the hours, circled the earth with one continuous and unbroken strain of the martial airs of England!"

## XXVII. CHRONOLOGICAL FACTS

CONNECTED WITH THE HISTORY OF BRITISH AMERICA, &amp;c.

Columbus discovers America, October 1, .....	1492
Cabot discovers the island of Newfoundland, June, .....	1497
Henry VII. grants a patent for the establishment of Colonies in America.....	1502
Newfoundland settled .....	1522
Jacques Cartier enters the St. Lawrence, visits Hochelaga, and discovers Canada..	1535
Cape Breton discovered.....	1536
Jean François de Roberval appointed first French Viceroy of Canada .....	1540
Jacques Cartier visits Canada as second in command to Roberval.....	1540
First English Act of Parliament relating to America (Newfoundland fisheries) passed	1548
Death of Roberval the first French Viceroy of Canada, on his voyage from France	1549
Frobisher's expedition from England to Labrador .....	1576
French trade with Canada renewed.....	1581
Sir H. Gilbert takes possession of Newfoundland, the first colony in America, in the name of Queen Elizabeth .....	1583
Sir Walter Raleigh introduced smoking into England .....	1586
Virginia Dare, the first English child born in North America .....	1587
First Newspaper published in England .....	1588
Marquis de la Roche, the Viceroy, authorised to take possession of Canada.....	1598
Pierre du Guast De Monts receives a patent of territory in America from 40° to 46° N. lat .....	1603
He explores and names the Bay of Fundy.....	1604
Quebec founded by Champlain.....	1608
River Hudson discovered by Henry Hudson .....	1610
First contest of France and England in America at Mount Desert, Penobscot river	1613
Acadia named Nova Scotia and granted to Sir William Alexander by James I....	1621
Colony and trade of Quebec placed in the hands of the Company of 100 associates	1627
First ploughing with oxen at Quebec.....	1628
Quebec captured by Sir David Kerrk.....	1629
Charles I., by the treaty of St. Germain, cedes to Louis XIII. New France.....	1632
Jesuit College founded at Quebec.....	1635
First horse brought into Canada and presented to Governor M. de Montmagny....	1647
Iroquois massacre of 400 persons at St. Ignace .....	1649
Extermination of the Eries by the Iroquois.....	1654
Conquest of Jamaica .....	1655
First authentic account of the Falls of Niagara.....	1658
François de Laval, first Roman Catholic Bishop of Quebec, consecrated.....	1658
Quebec Seminary (Laval University) established.....	1663
Pontiac's capture of nine British forts on the great lakes .....	1663
Translation of the Bible into Indian by the Rev. J. Eliot.....	1664
Horses generally introduced into Canada.....	1665
French West Indian Colonies granted to French West India Company by Colbert..	1665
M. de Tracy's expedition 700 miles inland against the Indians.....	1666

Peace with the Indians, and visit of Perrot, 1,200 miles west of Quebec .....	1667
Ravages of small pox among the Canadian Indians .....	1670
Formal submission of the Indians to the French King .....	1671
Hudson's Bay Company established .....	1672
Forts Frontenac and Michilimackinac built .....	1672
Discovery of the Mississippi by Jolliette and Father Marquette .....	1673
First vessel launched on Lake Erie by De la Salle .....	1678
Stockade fort built at Niagara by De la Salle .....	1679
Louisiana visited and named by Father Hennepin .....	1682
De la Barre's menace and treaty with the Iroquois .....	1684
Estimated population of Canada 17,000 in .....	1685
Denonville's expedition against the New York and English Colonies .....	1687
English treaty with the Iroquois renewed 27th June .....	1689
Iroquois massacre at Montreal 26th July .....	1682
Unsuccessful attack on Quebec by Sir William Phipps .....	1690
Death of Frontenac at Quebec, aged 78 .....	1698
Peace concluded with the Indians by Governor De Callières .....	1699
First newspaper published in America .....	1704
Gibraltar taken by the British .....	1704
Hemp and flax first raised in Canada .....	1705
Colonel Schuyler and five Indian Chiefs went to England to induce Queen Anne to reduce Canada .....	1710
Ginseng discovered in Canada by Father Lasitan .....	1715
Acadia ceded to England and settled .....	1748
Halifax, Nova Scotia, founded .....	1749
New Style adopted and eleven days gained in the calendar of Great Britain .....	1752
Great earthquake in Canada .....	1755
Massacre of British soldiers at Fort William Henry (Lake George) by French Indians .....	1757
Cape Breton, Isle Royal, St. John, and Fort Frontenac captured .....	1758
First Assembly in Nova Scotia .....	1758
Capture of Quebec by Wolfe, and Niagara by Sir William Johnson .....	1759
Surrender of Montreal, Detroit, and Fort Michilimackinac to the English .....	1760
Treaty of Fontainebleau and cession of Canada, Nova Scotia, Cape Breton, &c. ....	1763
Captain James Cook surveys the Gulf of St. Lawrence .....	1763
First newspaper published at Quebec, 21st June .....	1764
Maple Sugar first made in New England .....	1765
Sir James Murray, first British Governor of Canada .....	1765
Stamp Act agreed to by Canada and Nova Scotia .....	1765
Address to Canadians asking them to join in the American Revolution .....	1775
Defeat of Montgomery and Arnold before Quebec .....	1775
American Declaration of Independence .....	1776
Landing of American United Empire Loyalists in Nova Scotia .....	1783
Removal of the Iroquois Indians to Canada .....	1784
English Criminal Law introduced into Canada .....	1784
New Brunswick made a separate province .....	1784
Australia colonised in .....	1785
Site of Fredericton selected by Sir Guy Carleton (Lord Dorchester) .....	1785
Bar of Lower Canada organised .....	1785



First Session of the General Assembly of St. John, New Brunswick.....	1786
Botany Bay first visited by Captain Cook .....	1787
Division of Upper and Lower Canada .....	1791
Colonel John Graves Simcoe, first Lieutenant Governor of Upper Canada.....	1792
First Upper and Lower Canada Parliaments.....	1792
Upper Canada divided into Districts.....	1792
Trial by jury established in Upper Canada, 15th October .....	1792
First Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Quebec.....	1793
First Marriage Act of Upper Canada passed.....	1793
Slavery abolished in Upper Canada.....	1793
Court of Queen's Bench established in Upper Canada.....	1794
Upper Canada Law Society incorporated.....	1795
Extradition of Criminals from Canada to other British Colonies authorised .....	1797
Upper Canada divided into Counties.....	1798
Malta taken by the British .....	1800
English Criminal Law, as revised, introduced into Upper Canada, 4th July.....	1800
Slavery abolished in Lower Canada .....	1803
Grammar Schools established in Upper Canada .....	1807
First Steamer in America; Fulton's on the River Hudson.....	1807
First Steamer at Quebec.....	1811
American declaration of war and invasion of Canada.....	1812
Detroit taken, and battle of Queenston.....	1812
Battle of Stoney Creek, 6th June .....	1813
York (Toronto) taken by the Americans, 28th April.....	1813
Battle of Chrystler's Farm, November.....	1813
Battle of Niagara, 19th December.....	1813
Oswego and Fort George taken by the Canadians.....	1814
Treaty of Ghent between the United States and England, 24th December.....	1814
Treaty of Paris, and French right to Newfoundland fisheries confirmed .....	1814
The Upper Canada Parliament grants \$4,000 to erect a monument to Sir Isaac Brock .....	1815
Common Schools first established in Upper Canada.....	1816
Her Majesty the Queen born 24th May.....	1819
Uniform Provincial currency (5s. to the dollar) established .....	1821
Tithes abolished in Upper Canada (in 1821) assented to .....	1823
Welland Canal Company incorporated .....	1824
First Roman Catholic Bishop of (Kingston) Upper Canada.....	1826
Bounty of \$500 to each paper-mill established in Upper Canada .....	1826
King's College, Fredericton, New Brunswick, chartered .....	1828
Construction of Rideau Canal authorised.....	1827
Toronto University chartered.....	1827
Presbyterians, Methodists, Baptists, Congregationalists, &c., authorised to hold church property .....	1828
Naturalisation Laws of Upper Canada assented to .....	1828
Upper Canada College established .....	1829
McGill College (Medical Faculty), Montreal, established .....	1829
Ministers of various religious persuasions authorised to solemnise matrimony .....	1831
Upper Canada Academy (Victoria College), Cobourg, established.....	1832

First cholera at Quebec .....	1832
Canada Provincial Penitentiary established at Kingston .....	1833
Remarkable aurora and shooting stars in America .....	1833
Standard weights for grain fixed in Upper Canada .....	1835
Regiopolis College at Kingston established .....	1835
Court of Chancery established in Upper Canada .....	1837
Agricultural Societies established in Upper Canada .....	1837
Accession of Queen Victoria, 20th June .....	1837
Great fire at St. John, New Brunswick .....	1837
Canadian insurrection .....	1837
Lunatic Asylum established in Upper Canada .....	1839
First Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Toronto .....	1839
Lord Durham's Report published .....	1839
Union of Upper and Lower Canada .....	1840
First Cunard steamers to Halifax .....	1840
University of Queen's College, Kingston, Upper Canada, established .....	1840
Upper Canada Magnetical Observatory established .....	1840
University of Victoria College, Cobourg, incorporated .....	1840
Congregational Theological Institute, Toronto, established .....	1840
Municipal system introduced into Upper Canada .....	1841
Common School system revived in Upper and Lower Canada .....	1841
Treaty of Washington, N. E. boundary settled .....	1842
Oregon treaty and extradition of criminals with the United States agreed to .....	1843
Toronto University opened .....	1843
Bishop's College, Lennoxville, Lower Canada, incorporated .....	1843
First General Assembly of Newfoundland .....	1843
Knox's College, Toronto, established .....	1844
United Presbyterian Divinity Hall established .....	1844
Geological Survey of Canada authorised .....	1845
First Roman Catholic Bishop of Toronto .....	1845
Great Fire at Quebec .....	1845
Educational System of Upper and Lower Canada established .....	1846
Normal School of Upper Canada established .....	1847
Journal of Education for Upper Canada established .....	1848
St. Joseph's College, Bytown, established .....	1849
Post Office management transferred to Canada .....	1849
Canada at the Industrial Exhibition, London .....	1849
University of Trinity College, Toronto, established .....	1851
Laval University, Quebec, chartered .....	1852
St. Michael's College, Toronto, established .....	1852
Reciprocity Treaty with the United States .....	1854
Grand Trunk Railway commenced .....	1854
Clergy Reserve Question settled .....	1854
First Roman Catholic Bishops of Hamilton and Sandwich, Upper Canada .....	1856
Belleville Methodist Episcopal Seminary established .....	1857
Three Normal Schools and two Journals of Education established in Lower Canada .....	1857
First Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Huron, Upper Canada .....	1857
Decimal system of money adopted in Canada, 1st January .....	1858

The silver and copper decimal coin for Canada first circulated .....	1858
The 100th Regiment of the Line raised in Canada .....	1858
Atlantic Cable between Ireland and Newfoundland successfully laid.....	1858
Second Monument to Sir Isaac Brock inaugurated at Queenston.....	1859
New buildings of the Toronto University and University College completed....	1859
Completion of the Victoria Bridge, Montreal .....	1859
Grand Trunk Railway connection completed from Detroit to Portland .....	1859
Statutes of Canada and Upper Canada consolidated .....	1859

## XVIII. TABLE OF PRECEDENCE,

FOR CANADA, NOVA SCOTIA, NEW BRUNSWICK, NEWFOUNDLAND AND PRINCE  
EDWARD ISLAND.

The Governor General.	The Members of the Legislative Council.
The Lieutenant Governor, or Administrator.	The Speaker of the House of Assembly.
The Commander-in-Chief.	The Members of the House of Assembly.
The Bishop.	Heads of Departments not in the Cabinet.
The Chief Justice, Queen's Bench.	The Archdeacon.
The Chancellor.	Commissioner, or Comptroller of Customs.
The Chief Justice, Common Pleas.	The Surveyor General.
The Vice Chancellors.*	The Clerk of the Executive Council.
The Puisné Judges.*	The Clerk of the Legislative Council.
The Members of the Executive Council.	The Clerk of the House of Assembly.
The Speaker, Legislative Council.	The Deputy Heads of Departments.
	Other Civil and Military Officers.

\* In the order of their appointment.

In the Press, to be published in the Spring of 1860.

## LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY,

BY J. GEORGE HODGINS, ESQ., M.A.,

*Embellished with about 40 superior Maps, and 100 fine Engravings.*

This GEOGRAPHY, while it is designed to furnish a satisfactory *résumé* of geographical knowledge of all parts of the world, will give equal prominence to the BRITISH COLONIES, concerning which such meagre information is generally found in works of this kind. It is designed and will be a suitable Text Book for children in CANADA, NOVA SCOTIA, NEW BRUNSWICK, NEWFOUNDLAND, PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, the EAST and WEST INDIES, AUSTRALIA, &c.

The Maps and Wood-Cuts are now in course of preparation, and every effort will be made to expedite publication. The work will, at the latest, be in the Bookstores in the Spring of 1860. Price \$1.

JOHN LOVELL, *Publisher.*

Montreal, Nov. 16, 1859.

---

In preparation.

## EASY LESSONS

IN

## GENERAL GEOGRAPHY,

FOR THE USE OF YOUNGER PUPILS;

Being introductory to Lovell's General Geography. To be embellished with Maps and Illustrations,

BY J. GEORGE HODGINS, ESQ., M.A.

JOHN LOVELL,

*Publisher.*

Montreal, Nov. 16, 1859.



Just Published.

---

NATIONAL ARITHMETIC,  
IN THEORY AND PRACTICE,  
DESIGNED FOR THE USE OF CANADIAN SCHOOLS,  
BY JOHN HERBERT SANGSTER, ESQ.,

*Mathematical Master and Lecturer in Chemistry and Natural Philosophy  
in the Normal School for Upper Canada.*

JOHN LOVELL,  
*Printer and Publisher.*

Montreal, Nov. 16, 1859.

---

LOVELL'S SERIES OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

Just Published,

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION

OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S

HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

*From the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Death of George II,*

WITH A CONTINUATION TO THE YEAR 1853,

With questions for examination at the end of each Section. Besides a variety of valuable information added throughout the work, consisting of Tables of Contemporary Sovereigns, and of Eminent Persons; copious Explanatory Notes, Remarks on the Politics, Manners and Literature of the Age, an Outline of the Constitution, &c. Illustrated with Numerous Engravings. By WM. C. TAYLOR, LL.D., of Trinity College, Dublin, author of Manual of Ancient and Modern History, &c. *First Canadian Edition.*

JOHN LOVELL,  
*Printer and Publisher.*

Montreal, Nov. 16, 1859.

In preparation.

# A SCHOOL HISTORY OF CANADA,

AND OF

THE OTHER BRITISH PROVINCES.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS.

BY J. GEORGE HODGINS, ESQ., M.A.

JOHN LOVELL, *Publisher.*

---

In the Press, and shortly will be published :

THE IMPROVED

## ETYMOLOGICAL SPELLING BOOK ;

BY MEANS OF WHICH

*The hitherto difficult art of Orthography is rendered easy and pleasant,  
and acquired in a fourth of the usual time.*

With several hundred Exercises on Etymologies, Equivocal Words, and Verbal Distinctions.

BY G. G. VASEY.

A liberal discount will be allowed to the Trade and to Country Merchants.

JOHN LOVELL,  
*Publisher.*

---

In the Press, and shortly will be published :

## GRAMMAR MADE EASY

TO THE

CAPACITY OF CHILDREN.

*In which, by pleasant Exercises, a knowledge of the Parts of Speech is  
immediately acquired.*

BY G. G. VASEY.

A liberal discount will be allowed to the Trade and to Country Merchants.

CANADA DIRECTORY OFFICE,  
Montreal, Nov., 1859.

JOHN LOVELL,  
*Publisher.*

# Bookbinding and Printing.

---

The Subscriber having engaged skilful and experienced Workmen, and being provided with the latest improved and most extensive Machinery, is now prepared to execute

## BOOKBINDING

IN EVERY VARIETY OF STYLE AND FINISH.

LIBRARIES RE-BOUND, and BOOKS REPAIRED, at moderate rates.

## BLANK BOOKS MANUFACTURED

To any pattern. A large supply always on hand,

The Edges of Blank and Letter-Press Books MARBLED for the Trade,  
at short notice. All kinds of

## BOOK AND JOB PRINTING,

Carefully and promptly executed, on the most reasonable terms.

JOHN LOVELL,  
*Printer and Bookbinder.*

CANADA DIRECTORY OFFICE,  
Montreal, December, 1859.

---

LOVELL & GIBSON,  
PRINTERS AND BOOKBINDERS,

CORNER OF YONGE AND MELINDA STREETS,  
TORONTO.









LA 1001.971.H61 1860





